

st

# PREP

FIRST TERM

NEW TERM



ALADWA

Gem

2024



# • Contents •

## Module 1 Family and friends

Unit 1	My family and me .....	7
Unit 2	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1 .....	49
Unit 3	It's my favourite subject .....	52
Review	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2 .....	92
Unit 4	Monthly Models on units 1&2 .....	95
Unit 5	Different people .....	100
Review	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3 .....	137
Unit 6	Review A .....	140

## Module 2 The world around us

Unit 4	We're using technology! .....	143
Unit 5	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4 .....	180
Review	Monthly Models on Units 3&4 .....	183
Unit 6	Holidays .....	188
Review	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5 .....	228
End of the Book	Let's eat! .....	231
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6 .....	275
	Review B .....	278
	End of Term Practice .....	281
	Listening Texts .....	285
	Challenging Questions Answers .....	286

**توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2023-2024  
الفصل الدراسي الأول**

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Three (SB + WB)		
September	Unit 1	December	Unit 5 (cont.) + 6 + Review B
October	Unit 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3	January (2024)	General Revision
November	Review A + 4 + 5		



## Unit 1

# My family and me

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** An interview with twin brothers; Heidi; a text about a gymnast

**Writing** A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family

**Listening** An interview with twin brothers

**Speaking** Talking about your family; asking questions

**Language** Pronouns; present simple

**Life Skills** Self-management

**Values** Love of family

**Issues** Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging

Tapescripts





## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Family members أفراد الأسرة			
aunt (n)	عمة/خالة – زوجة العم/الخال	great-grandfather (n)	الجد الأكبر (جد الأب/الأم) (n)
daughter (n)	ابنة	great-grandmother (n)	الجدة الكبيرة (جدة الأب/الأم) (n)
grandfather (n)	جد	son (n)	أبن
grandmother (n)	جدة	uncle (n)	عم/خال – زوج العممة/الخالة
Both ذكور وإناث			
cousin (n)	ابن/ابنة (العم/العممة/الخال/الخالة)	great-grandparents (n)	أجداد الأجداد
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	parents (n)	الوالدان
(be) aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	twin (n)	توأم
diary (n)	مفكرة/يوميات	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

arrive (d) (v)	يصل	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
birthday (n)	عيد ميلاد	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
busy (adj)	مشغول/مزدحم	sports (n)	ألعاب رياضية
children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	together (adv)	معاً/سوياً
favourite hobby	هواية مفضلة	use (d) (v)	يستخدم

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

hospital – uncle – hobby – aunt

1 My ..... is called Wafaa.

يهدف هذا التدريب

لقياس فهمك

المفردات الرئيسية

والإضافية.

2 Reading is my favourite .....

3 My cousin is in the ..... because he's ill.

## العبارات اللغوية

### Language Expressions

music	يعرف موسيقى	make > noise	يصنع ضوضاء
play chess	يلعب شطرنج	do > hobbies	يمارس هوايات
the drums	يعرف على الطبول	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	listen to > music	يسمع إلى الموسيقى
watch a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة القدم	You're welcome.	عفواً.

## حروف الجر

### Prepositions

a picture of	صورة لـ	clap (ped) for	يصفق لـ
belong to	يتبع إلى/يخص	proud of	فخور بـ
at the hospital	في المستشفى	on TV/the radio	في التلفاز/على الراديو
for no money	بدون مال	What kind of ...?	ما نوع ...؟

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove
show	يبين/يوضح	Showed
hit	يضرب	hit
throw	يرمى	threw
write	يكتب	wrote
meet	يقابل	met

## كلمات وعدها

### Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عدها
finish	ينتهي	start/begin	يبدأ
true	صواب	false	خطأ

### Check Point

Choose and complete:

to – for – do – make

- 1 Don't ..... noise. Your father is sleeping.
- 2 That car belongs ..... my uncle.
- 3 What hobbies do you ..... in your free time?

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللغوية  
وحرروف الجر.

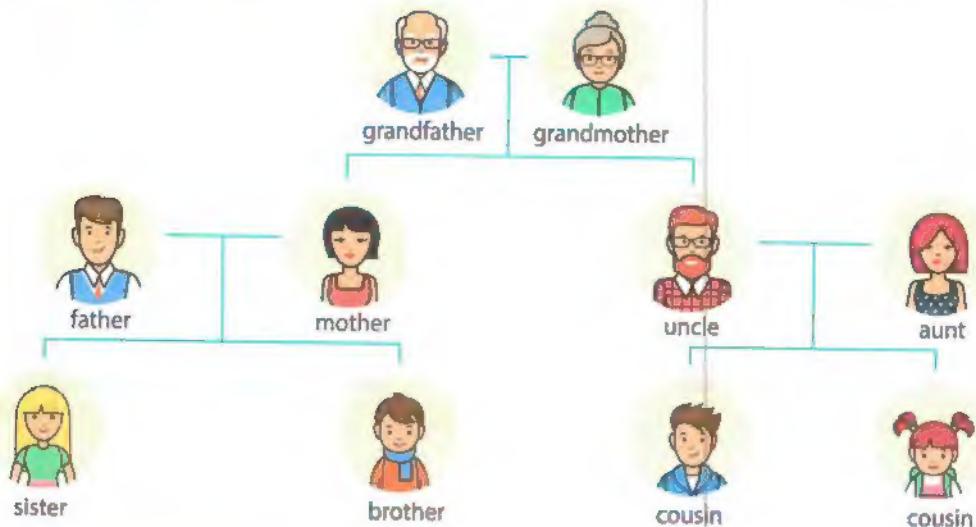
# Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً  
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية



1

## Family members



## Relationship

**grandfather** is my father's/ mother's **father**.



**grandmother** is my father's/ mother's **mother**.



**brother** is my father's/ mother's **son**.



**sister** is my father's/ mother's **daughter**.



**uncle** is my father's/ mother's **brother**.



**aunt** is my father's/ mother's **sister**.



**cousin** is my uncle's/ aunt's **son/ daughter**.



يُسمى / يُدعى

**2** is called

- My grandmother **is called** Huda.

**3** Let's + inf.

هيا بنا (استخدم لاقتراح)

- **Let's go** to meet our grandparents.

**4** , too

أيضاً (تاتي في آخر الجملة المثبتة)

- My mum is a teacher. My dad is a teacher, **too**.

**5** go + (v + ing) / love – like (noun/ v + ing) يذهب / يحب

- I **go swimming** on Saturdays.
- I **like chess/playing chess**.
- I **love football/watching football matches**.

**6** on + (Saturday, Sunday, ...)

تأتي مع أيام الأسبوع

- I play basketball **on Mondays** and **Wednesdays**.
- Tarek goes swimming **on Tuesdays** and he plays football **on Saturdays**.

**7** twins (n)

توأم (اسم يمكن جمعها)

تشير إلى مجموعة من الأخوة أو الأخوات من نفس الأم ونفس العمر.

- Eyad and Adham are **twins**.

**twin** (adj)

توأم (صفة - لا تجمع)

- Sally is my **twin** sister.

- Hany and Hady are **twin** brothers.

Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**1** My father **is** ..... Amr.

- a) calls
- c) called

- b) call
- d) cold

**2** It's raining. Let's ..... an umbrella.

- a) take
- c) takes

- b) taking
- d) took

**3** I usually go shopping ..... Sundays.

- a) in
- c) on

- b) at
- d) with

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء أثرياء للدراسة والفهم وليس المفهوم.

(1) مجموعات (2) الات (3) نفس العمر

## Definitions

## التعريفات

band	فرقة موسيقية	a group <sup>(1)</sup> of people who play music together
chess	شطرنج	a game for 2 people
drums	طبول	musical instruments <sup>(2)</sup> which you hit to make a noise
twins	توأم	brothers or sisters who are the same age <sup>(3)</sup>
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	work you do for no money

هذا الجزء يساعد الطالب على فهم المفردات بشكل أفضل ويقوم بتهيئة لصف الثالث الإعدادي والمرحلة الثانوية.

## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفتها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
finish	ينتهي	end	ينتهي
true	صواب	right	صواب
arrive	يصل	come	يأتي

## Suffix اللاحقة

اللاحقة: حرف أو مجموعة من الحروف توضع في نهاية الكلمة لتكون كلمة مختلفة وغالباً ما تغير نوع الكلمة.

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
play (v)	يلعب	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		player (n)	لاعب
music (n)	موسيقى	-al		تحويل الاسم لصفة		musical (adj)	موسيقي

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
diary	صكيرة/يوميات	dairy	منتجات الألبان
band	فرقة موسيقية	bend	يشتني / يبطوي
uncle	عم/خال	ankle	كاحل القدم

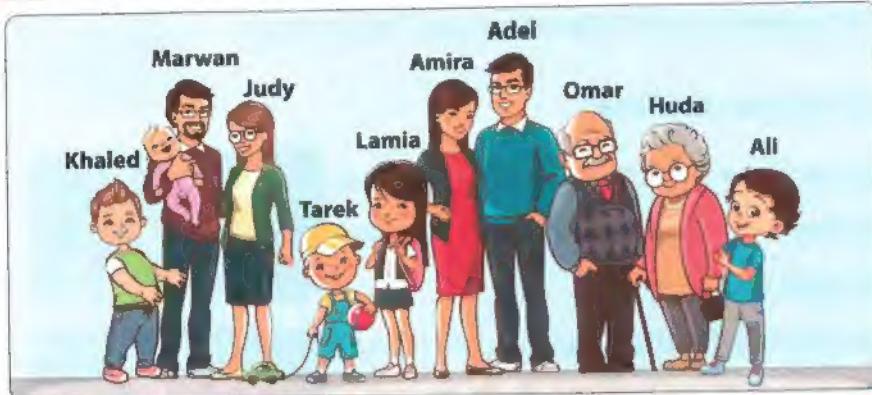
هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة المستخدمة في المjugae ولكن مختلفة في المعنى

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-reading question:

- How many members are there in your family?

Read and write the names of the people 1–10.



### Lesson 1

#### SB page 3

(1) الوالدان

(2) ابنة

(3) ابعة

(4) اخوه

(5) زوج العدة

(6) ابن العالة

Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family. My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my parents<sup>(1)</sup> are teachers at my school. They have one daughter<sup>(2)</sup> – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two sons<sup>(3)</sup> – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother is 64 and she's called Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather – he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt<sup>(4)</sup>. My uncle<sup>(5)</sup> is called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin<sup>(6)</sup>. It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

### Post-reading question: Choose:

- The main idea of the text is .....

- a) Ali's family
- b) Ali's school
- c) Ali's day
- d) Ali's hobby



### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

daughter /'dɔ:tər/  
picture /'pɪktʃər/

### Listen and complete the text with possessive adjectives. WB page 72

Lara : Hi! My name's Lara and this is **my** family. That's **my** brother. **His** name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are **our** parents. We have one cousin, Khadeejah. **Her** parents are **my** uncle and aunt. **Their** names are Imad and Dina. What about you? What's **your** name?

**Pre-reading question:** - What's your favourite sport?

## Lesson 2

 **Read the interview and answer the question.**

**SB page 4**

### An interview<sup>(1)</sup> with twin<sup>(2)</sup> brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both aged<sup>(3)</sup> 12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're twins!

- (1) مباركة / جوار
- (2) نوع
- (3) بالغ من العمر
- (4) الموسيقى
- (5) فرقه موسيقيه
- (6) كل تطوير

**Interviewer: What are your hobbies?**

**Hazem** I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.



**Hatem** And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!



**Hazem** I love football!



**Hatem** I don't like football but I like music. I play the drums and I listen to music<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Hazem** He plays the drums in a band<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Interviewer: Do you have any hobbies that you both like?**

**Hazem** We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

**Hatem** Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do voluntary work<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Interviewer: What kind of voluntary work?**

**Hazem** We help in the children's hospital.

**Hatem** We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!



### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية

**Post-reading questions:**

1 Who always wins at chess?

voluntary /vɔləntri/ Wednesday /wenz.deɪ/

2 Choose: The word "voluntary" means work you do .....

a) for a lot of money

b) for no money

c) for much money

d) to be rich

### Pre-listening question:

- What are your favourite hobbies?

Listen and complete the diaries.

SB page 5

**Interviewer** Can I ask you some more questions?

**Hazem** Yes, of course.

**Interviewer** Hazem, when do you play basketball?

**Hazem** I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.



**Interviewer** And when do you play football?

**Hazem** I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.

**Interviewer** When do you go swimming?

**Hazem** I go swimming on Tuesdays.

**Interviewer** Wow, you are busy! Hatem, when do you play the drums?

**Hatem** I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

**Interviewer** What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?

**Hatem** I listen to music. I like pop music.

**Interviewer** What do you do on Saturdays?

**Hatem** I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.



**Interviewer** Thank you both.

**Hazem** You're welcome.

### Post-listening question:

- List the activities that Hazem does every week.

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practice more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father and mother are my ..... E - E English  
 a) grandchildren    b) cousins    c) parents    d) daughters
  
2. This is my ..... He's my mother's brother. E - E English  
 a) son    b) father    c) ankle    d) uncle
  
3. Your mum or dad's mother is your ..... E - E English  
 a) grandmother    b) aunt    c) grandfather    d) grandparents
  
4. Osama plays the violin in a famous ..... E - E English  
 a) band    b) bank    c) bend    d) pond
  
5. I like my ..... Abdullah because he's very kind and friendly. E - E English  
 a) aunt    b) sister    c) daughter    d) cousin
  
6. Eman and Amany are ..... They are sisters and aged 15. E - E English  
 a) double    b) couple    c) twins    d) pairs
  
7. I'm ..... I don't have time to play. E - E English  
 a) busy    b) free    c) ready    d) strong
  
8. We usually ..... swimming in the sea in summer. E - E English  
 a) play    b) go    c) do    d) make
  
9. Your sister is your parent's ..... E - E English  
 a) daughter    b) cousin    c) mother    d) aunt
  
10. My little brother is ..... five years. E - E English  
 a) ages    b) age    c) aged    d) age's
  
11. My sister's ..... is in October. It's a special day. E - E English  
 a) band    b) birthday    c) diary    d) chess
  
12. I always ..... chess with my dad every Friday. E - E English  
 a) do    b) make    c) get    d) play
  
13. My father ..... to football matches on the radio. WB  
 a) listens    b) plays    c) does    d) watches

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

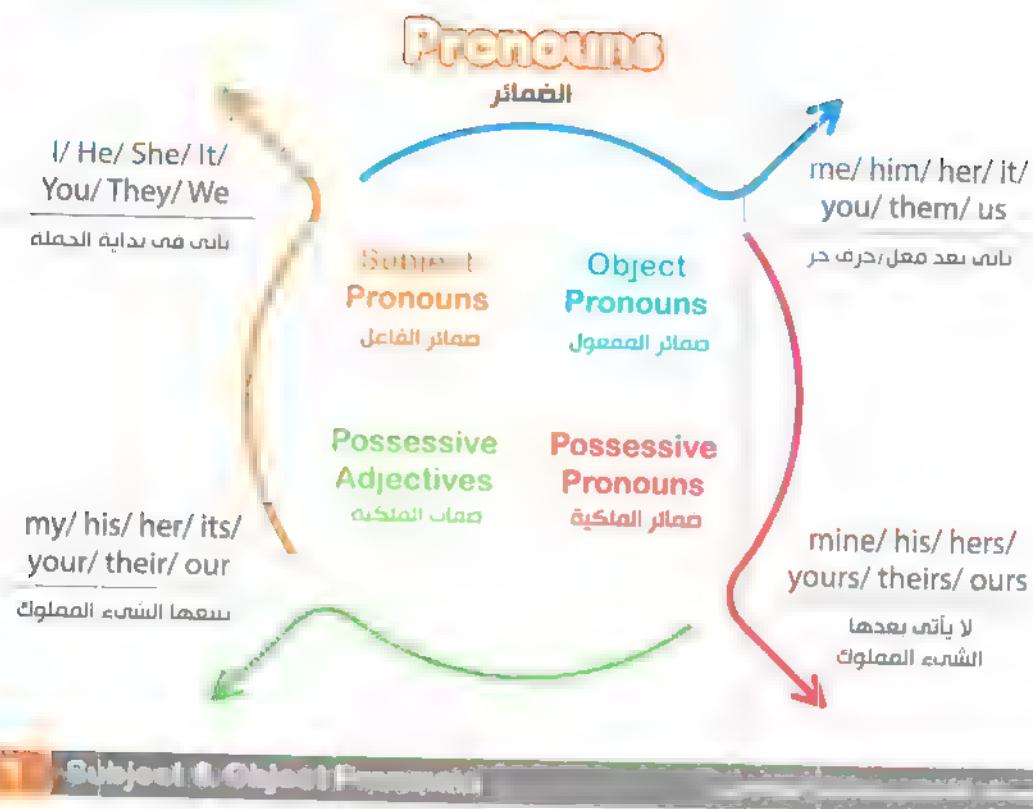
1. We never go to school ..... Fridays.  
a) in      b) at      c) for      d) on
2. Reading and chess are my favourite ..... .  
a) hopes      b) foods      c) meals      d) hobbies
3. I ..... tennis matches on TV.  
a) wash      b) read      c) watch      d) write
4. Our parents are proud ..... us.  
a) at      b) of      c) on      d) to
5. I usually ..... to music on the radio.  
a) listen      b) hear      c) make      d) do
6. The teacher was angry because most boys ..... noise.  
a) made      b) read      c) watched      d) wrote
7. A ... is a group of people playing musical instruments together.  
a) parent      b) party      c) band      d) chorus
8. Your parents, brothers and sisters are called your family ..... .  
a) friends      b) members      c) cousins      d) aunts
9. .... are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks.  
a) Drums      b) Guitars      c) Flutes      d) Harps
10. My brother has a/an ..... to get a job.  
a) instrument      b) interview      c) match      d) visit
11. I write everything during the day in my ..... .  
a) dairy      b) interview      c) band      d) diary
12. She works at hospital for no money. She does ..... work.  
a) easy      b) voluntary      c) worthless      d) bad
13. My favourite book is ..... "Treasure Island".  
a) cold      b) called      c) pulled      d) scored

لحل المزدوج من التمارين، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





# C Language



## Subject & Object Pronouns

### Subject pronouns

(تاتي في بداية الجملة)

I	- I have a shirt.
You	- You have a book.
He	- He has a jacket.
She	- She has a dog.
It	- It has a long neck.
We	- We have a bird.
You	- You have a house.
They	- They have a car.

### Object pronouns

ضمائر المفعول (تاتي بعد الفعل او حرف الحر)

me	- My father bought it <b>for me</b> .
you	- This book belongs <b>to you</b> .
him	- This jacket belongs <b>to him</b> .
her	- I saw <b>her</b> playing with it.
it	- I like <b>watching it</b> .
us	- This bird <b>makes us happy</b> .
you	- This house belongs <b>to you</b> .
them	- This car belongs <b>to them</b> .

## Possessive Adjectives & Possessive Pronouns

### Possessive adjectives

#### صفات الملكية

صفات الملكية هي صفات تدل على الملكية وتحتلق عن ضمائر الملكية في أنها (باتباعها الشيء الم المملوكي)

<b>My</b>	- This is <b>my pen</b> .
<b>Your</b>	- This is <b>your book</b> .
<b>His</b>	- This is <b>his jacket</b> .
<b>Her</b>	- This is <b>her dress</b> .
<b>Its</b>	- I have a car, <b>its colour</b> is red.
<b>Our</b>	- This is <b>our house</b> .
<b>Your</b>	- This is <b>your car</b> .
<b>Their</b>	- This is <b>their bike</b> .

### Possessive pronouns

#### ضمائر الملكية

ضمائر الملكية هي ضمائر تدل على تملك الشيء وتاتي مفهولة (أ) باتباعها الشيء المملوكي

<b>mine</b>	- This pen is <b>mine</b> .
<b>yours</b>	- This book is <b>yours</b> .
<b>his</b>	- This jacket is <b>his</b> .
<b>hers</b>	- This dress is <b>hers</b> .
.....	.....
<b>ours</b>	- This house is <b>ours</b> .
<b>yours</b>	- This car is <b>yours</b> .
<b>theirs</b>	- This bike is <b>theirs</b> .

### الخط

للسؤال عن مالك الشيء نستخدم (Whose) يعقبه ملك من/لمن

#### 1. Whose + ...؟

- A: Whose pen is this?
- B: It's my pen.
- A: Whose shoes are these?
- B: They are Hoda's shoes. They are hers.

B: It's **mine**.

B: They are Hoda's.

#### 2. belong to + مالك الشيء

- This dress **belongs to** my sister.
- These shoes **belong to** my father.
- It's my father's car. It **belongs to** him.

بعض / سهل

ويستخدم للتغيير عن الملكية



#### Read and correct the underlined words:

1 This book is Mona's. It belongs to hers.

(.....)

يمكنك هذه الحركة من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال بصيغة الخط مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة للتغيير فهمك للدرس

2 That red bag doesn't belong to me. My is black.

(.....)

3 Huda and Omar love them parents.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**their**) لأن ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم (parents).

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

► 1. Throw the ball to ..... please. I am waiting.

a) I      b) mine      c) my      d) me

2. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet .....

a) he      b) his      c) him      d) her

3. This is my aunt. .... name is Amal.

a) His      b) Her      c) Hers      d) My

4. Tell ..... about your family.

a) I      b) my      c) me      d) mine

5. That's ..... father's car.

a) I      b) me      c) my      d) mine

6. Our parents are proud of ..... because we work hard at school.

a) her      b) us      c) our      d) she

7. Look at Basmala and Batoull! ..... are walking quickly.

a) They      b) Them      c) She      d) Her

8. The children took ..... books from the teacher.

a) they      b) their      c) theirs      d) mine

9. Ali is my friend. I'm writing a letter to .....

a) him      b) he      c) she      d) her

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. This car belongs to me. It's my.

( ..... )

2. Ali is my best friend and her hobby is watching TV.

( ..... )

3. Amira and Noha love them parents.

( ..... )

4. That's me pen and this is yours.

( ..... )

5. Can you give me you ruler, please?

( ..... )

6. I have got a brother. He name is Mustafa.

( ..... )

# Time to Practise



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

► 1. My father gave ..... his watch.

a) I

b) my

c) mine

d) me

الشرقية

2. The radio belongs to my mother. It's .....

a) her

b) mine

c) hers

d) his

الشرقية

3. Clap for the football players. .... played very well.

a) Their

b) Them

c) They

d) Theirs

الشرقية

4. We can ride ..... bikes.

a) ours

b) our

c) we

d) us

الاسكندرية

5. Your dress is new. .... is old.

a) She

b) You

c) Mine

d) Me

الاسكندرية

6. Hany and I are friends. .... live in Tanta.

a) They

b) We

c) Us

d) Our

الشرقية

7. Munir and Mustafa are twins. .... sister is called Radwa.

a) Their

b) They

c) We

d) Our

الشرقية

8. A: ..... pencil is this? B: It's Heba's.

a) Whose

b) When

c) Where

d) What

الاسكندرية

9. There are two dogs. .... are brown and white.

a) It

b) Its

c) They

d) Their

الاسكندرية

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. That pencil case belongs to Ali. It's him.

(.....) القاهرة

2. It's her car. He often drives it.

(.....) كفر الشيخ

3. My son always does he homework at night.

(.....)

4. This red bag belongs to me. It's hers.

(.....) الاسكندرية

5. She is my sister. I'm hers brother.

(.....) المنيا

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة لا Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد اشتراكك معنا.



## D Skills



### Write it right

#### How to write about your family

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm (عدد السنون) years old.
- My dad's name is (الاسم). He is a/an (النوع).
- My mum's name is (الاسم). She is a/an (النوع).
- I have (عدد) brothers and (عدد) sisters.
- My grandfather is called (الاسم).
- My grandmother is called (الاسم).
- I have (عدد) cousins. I love my family.

#### Example

#### My family tree

My name's Tarek. I'm twelve years old. I love sports. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My dad's name is Ali. He's a teacher of English. He is a good teacher. All the students like him. He's kind and friendly. My mum's name's Aya. She's a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She helps sick people. I have one brother and one sister. My brother is called Hossam. He's 9 years old. My sister is called Nahla. She's 7 years old. My grandfather is called Sabry and my grandmother is called Safia. I have two cousins, Bahaa and Omar. We live in a big city. I love my family very much.

#### Write a paragraph about:

#### "All about you"

My name's ...

يهدف هذا الدرس إلى تعميق الطالب من كتابة  
فقرة بشكل جيد.

#### كيفية الكتابة عن أسرتك

#### Writing tips

Use capital letters for the beginning of a sentence, names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

والدلائل والمعارف السليمة

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 1

Lessons  
(1 & 2)

17

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

ص. الاسنام من مطبخ الكتب

1. Where does your family live?  
a) In Paris.      b) In Cairo.      c) In a village.      d) In Aswan.
2. Where does your father work?  
a) In France.      b) In a school.      c) In a hospital.      d) In an airport.
3. What's your mother's job?  
a) A doctor.      b) A nurse.      c) An engineer.      d) A teacher.
4. How many brothers do you have?  
a) One.      b) Two.      c) Three.      d) None.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

١ - ٢٣ اسئلة

1. I like playing the ..... in a band.  
a) chess      b) drums  
c) football      d) science
2. Famous people usually have a ..... life. They have no time to relax.  
a) poor      b) strange  
c) busy      d) normal
3. Your aunt is your mother's .....  
a) son      b) sister  
c) cousin      d) daughter
4. That necklace belongs ..... my sister.  
a) on      b) with  
c) to      d) at
5. "False" is the opposite of .....  
a) true      b) wrong  
c) proud      d) busy
6. Maher ..... voluntary work at a hospital.  
a) goes      b) gives  
c) plays      d) does
7. We are all ..... to be Egyptians.  
a) pound      b) proud  
c) pond      d) famous

WB

١ - ٢٣ اسئلة

8. Tarek and ..... cousin went to the park.

a) his      b) him      c) her      d) he

9. ..... dresses are these? They are Sara's.

a) Who's      b) Whose      c) Who      d) What

10. My dog is bigger than .....

a) yours      b) your      c) their      d) our

 **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. The dog had his breakfast. (.....)
2. This isn't our ball. Theirs is black and white. (....)
3. Tarek is my cousin. Today is her birthday. (....)
4. Amgad takes her daughter to the funfair to play and have fun. ( )

 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Your family"**



**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مطابع عربية من مطبوعات المكتبات

1. The twins are two children born at the ..... time.
- a) same      b) different      c) similar      d) difficult
2. Everyone should ..... a hobby to do.
- a) play      b) take      c) do      d) have
3. Here are the photos of Nader and me. ..... are sitting under the tree.
- a) Them      b) You      c) We      d) They



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	mountain (n)	جبل
attic (n)	علية المتنزل/السندرة	orphan (adj/n)	يتيم
goat (n)	عذة	sheep (n)	خرف/أغنام

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

airport (n)	مطار	city (n)	مدينة
beach (n)	شاطئ	Egypt (n)	مصر
bread (n)	خبز	How long ...?	كم العدة...؟

### المفردات الإضافية



Choose and complete: lion – goat – mountain

1 The \_\_\_\_\_ is my favourite farm animal.

2 This \_\_\_\_\_ is very high.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
المفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

### Language Expressions

catch > a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	see > birds	يرى الطيور
come > home	يأتى إلى البيت	walk > in the mountains	يمشى في الجبال
make > a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو	work > hard	يعمل بجد

### العبارات اللعوبية

### Prepositions

away from	بعيداً عن	in bed	في السرير
at the top of	في قمة	live with	يعيش مع
by bus	بأنوبيس	on the phone	على الهاتف
communicate with	يتواصل مع	talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع
good at	جيد في	think of	يفكر في

### حروف الجر

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الاموال غير المنتظم

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
catch يتحقق بـ	caught	caught	know يُعْرَف	knew	known
drink يشرب	drank	drunk	take يأخذ / يستعرف	took	taken
feel يشعر	felt	felt			

### Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	معندها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
old	كبير السن	young	صغر السن
big	كبير الحجم	small	صغر الحجم
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب

Choose and complete: do - come - make - at

- 1 Sally is good ..... playing chess.
- 2 We can ..... video calls using the tablet.
- 3 When does your father ..... home from work?

بعدد، هذا لتدريب  
نفس فهمك  
للمهارات اللغوية  
و دروس لغير

ادرس معلمات اسفله جداً  
لها مضمون سلسه امدادات

يسعى (ومثا)

1 take + (مدة زمرة) + to + inf.

• I took two hours to do my homework.

2 help + inf. / to + inf.

• The internet can help you communicate with your friends.  
• I helped my mother to make lunch yesterday.

ساعد

3 would ('d) like to + inf.

• I would like to see my grandparents every day.

يود ان/ يريد ان

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 How long does it take ..... to school?

a) go                      b) goes                      c) to go                      d) to going

2 I'd like ..... when I get older.

a) travelling              b) to travel              c) travel                      d) travels

3 The questions were very difficult. The opposite of "difficult" is "

a) hard                      b) easy                      c) cute                              d) unimportant

Check Points

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء اثري للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



## التعريفات

### Definitions

goats	ماعز	animals that are like <sup>(1)</sup> sheep
orphan	يتيم	a child with no mother or father
attic	علية الصisel/السدرة	a room at the top of a house
city	مدينة	a place with lots of houses and shops

مثل (1)

جدة (2)

كثير من

### Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
beautiful	جميل	cute	جميل
big	كبير الحجم	large	كبير الحجم

### Prefix الابتداء

Prefix	الوظيفة	Function	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى		happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
			important	هام / مهم	unimportant	غير هام

### Countries & Cities

Cairo	القاهرة	Morocco	المغرب/مراكش
Cape Town	مدينة كيب تاون (جنوب إفريقيا)	Oman	عمان
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Paris	باريس
London	مدينة لندن (إنجلترا)	France	فرنسا
England	إنجلترا	Switzerland	سويسرا

### Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في المعنى ولكن مختلفة في المعنى
away	بعيد	a way	طريق/طريقة	
sheep	حروف	ship	سفينة	

## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-listening question:** - Name two countries in Europe and in Africa.

听力 Listen to Sami and Aya. Which three countries do you hear in the conversations?

聽力 Listening

SB page 7

**Sami** My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France<sup>(1)</sup>. He goes to the airport on Sundays and he catches a plane to Paris. It takes five hours to fly there. And then, he catches a plane home to Egypt<sup>(2)</sup> on Thursday evening. He works very hard.  
On Saturdays, we play football in the park, and we play chess. I love my dad, and I'm happy when he's at home.

جنوب اميريكا مصر فرنسا



**Aya** My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa<sup>(3)</sup>. They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there.  
I talk to them on the phone, but they don't have a computer, so we can't make a video call. I would like to see them every day, but I can't.



Note:

نعم كلام نطق الكلمات الجائزة

South /saʊθ/

Cape Town /kæp-taʊn/

**Post-listening question:** - Where do Aya's grandparents live?

Complete the text with these words.

WR Page 74

I am Hassan. My family **lives** in Alexandria, but my dad **doesn't work** in Egypt. He works in London. He **goes** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he **catches** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I **don't go** to school, and my father doesn't work. We **play** chess or we go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we **go** swimming. My brother **is** three and he **doesn't** swim. He **watches** us!

**Pre-reading question:**

- What is your favourite story?

**Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order.**

**SB page 8**

## Heidi

by Johanna Spyri

*Heidi* is the story of an **orphan**<sup>(1)</sup> girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland.

Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the **mountains**<sup>(2)</sup> and he has lots of **goats**<sup>(3)</sup>. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the **attic**<sup>(4)</sup> of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of **adventures**<sup>(5)</sup> in the city.

(1) أخو (2) دار (3) جلا

(4) علبة المعيش (5) مغامرات



### Note:

orphan /ɔ:rfin/ Switzerland /'switsalnd/ attic /ætik/

تعلم كتبنا بعنوان الكلمات الالاتية

### Post-reading question:

- Write a summary of the story.

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A room at the top of a house is called a/an  
a) kitchen      b) bathroom      c) mountain      d) attic
2. ..... are animals that are like sheep.  
a) Monkeys      b) Cows      c) Goats      d) Buffaloes
3. He has no parents. He is a/an ...  
a) twin      b) athlete      c) orphan      d) footballer
4. We can ..... a video call to our cousins in England.  
a) come      b) do      c) make      d) write
5. My cousin is very good ..... drawing.  
a) in      b) of      c) at      d) about
6. He goes to the ..... on Mondays and he catches a plane to Paris.  
a) airport      b) station      c) club      d) school
7. I love my father, and I'm ..... when he's at home.  
a) sad      b) happy      c) ugly      d) bad
8. I always talk to my friends ..... the phone.  
a) of      b) in      c) on      d) at
9. I like my house because it's .....  
a) beautiful      b) bad      c) orphan      d) ugly
10. Heidi ..... in a bed in the attic of the house.  
a) sleeps      b) walks      c) leaves      d) goes
11. Every day, Laila walks in the mountains to ..... birds and flowers.  
a) fly      b) see      c) eat      d) sleep
12. In the morning, I drink milk and eat ..... and cheese.  
a) water      b) tea      c) bread      d) juice
13. I usually go to school ..... school bus.  
a) to      b) with      c) on      d) by

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People like going to the ..... in the summer to swim in the sea.  
 a) cave      b) lake      c) beach      d) mountain
2. My dad works in London. He always ..... a plane to go there.  
 a) comes      b) catches      c) sleeps      d) arrives
3. I walk to school because my house isn't far away ..... it.  
 a) at      b) off      c) to      d) from
4. Heidi ..... in the mountains with the goats every day.  
 a) walks      b) flies      c) watches      d) takes
5. Many people use the internet to ..... with each other.  
 a) stay      b) live      c) go      d) communicate
6. Last week, I had a lot of ..... in Dream Park.  
 a) adventures      b) stories      c) animals      d) mountains
7. It ..... twelve hours to go to Aswan.  
 a) makes      b) takes      c) gives      d) talks
8. She is an orphan girl, so she goes to live ..... her grandfather.  
 a) at      b) about      c) to      d) with
9. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of .....  
 a) airports      b) planes      c) goats      d) tigers
10. We should work ..... to make our country great.  
 a) hard      b) easy      c) busy      d) free
11. When I ..... home, I have something to eat.  
 a) take      b) give      c) have      d) come
12. Egypt is the most important ..... in Africa.  
 a) village      b) town      c) city      d) country
13. I like my grandmother, so I would like ..... her every day.  
 a) to seeing      b) seeing      c) see      d) to see

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ من ملف التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



# C Language

## The present simple tense

الخط المعاين للتدريس

### Usage

الاستخدام يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في التعبير عن

#### 1 Facts

- The sun rises in the morning.
- The earth goes around the sun.

#### 2 Habits and routines

- We usually play tennis on Friday.
- Ola listens to music every day.

I You We They (اسم جم)  
-> inf.

I play football at the club.

Form التكوين

He She It (اسم مفرد)  
-> inf. + s/es/ies

She walks to school every day.



يتم إضافة (es) لفعل المضارع

- Leila washes the dishes in the morning.
- Hana goes to school on foot.

يتم إضافة (y) لفعل المضارع يحرر (y) وستنبعها حرف ساكن

- Salma studies hard.
- The baby cries when he's hungry.

- لنفي الجملة نستخدم (don't/doesn't) بعد الفاعل ويتبعهما المصدر.

I You We They (اسم جم)

### Negative

He She It (اسم مفرد)

I don't play football.

النفي

She doesn't walk to school.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1 My brother watch TV every night.

(.....) - الإجابة الصحيحة (watches) لأن الفاعل (My brother) مفرد، والفعل ينتهي بـ (ch).

2 Adel and Sami studies hard for their exams.

(.....) - الإجابة الصحيحة (study) لأن الفاعل (Adel and Sami) جم.

تمكنك هذه الجريدة من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال  
يصحح الخط مدعاة باسبيط الأدبيه لغغير مهمك للدرس



## Yes/No questions

	I		he
Do	you	> inf. ...?	she
	we		it
	they		(اسم مفرد)
	(اسم جمع)		
A: Do <b>you</b> play football?			A: Does <b>she</b> walk to school every day?
B: Yes, I do./ B: No, I don't.			B: Yes, she does./ B: No, she doesn't.

## Wh-questions

Q. word + **do/does** + subj. + **inf. ...?**

- Where **does** Tarek live?
- How **do** you go to school?

يمكن السؤال باستخدام (Verb to "be") مع الصفات

Am/ Is/ Are + ...؟ صفة / اسم / حرف جر + الفاعل

1) Are you a teacher?

2) Is Ali ready for the match?

لاحظ

(1)

**Verb "to be"** يكون  
يتكون في المضارع من: am, is, are  
 - I **am** (am not) a teacher.  
 - He **is** (isn't) happy.  
 - They **are** (aren't) at home.

(2)

**Verb "to have"** يملك  
يتكون في المضارع من: has, have  
 - Mona **has** (doesn't have) a nice car.  
 - I **have** (don't have) money.  
 - We **have** (don't have) a big house.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1) Do **she** live in Cairo?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does) لوجود (she).

2) My brother doesn't **travels** to Paris.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لأن (doesn't) يتبعها فعل في المصدر.

3) The boys don't **happy** because their father is abroad.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (aren't) لأن (verb "to be") يتبعه صفة/اسم.

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية ايجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعاة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

► Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d.

- 1. I ..... to bed at ten every day.
 

a) goes	b) go	c) went	d) going
---------	-------	---------	----------

T + F P. Ajmal
  
- 2. How long does it ..... you to come to school?
 

a) takes	b) taking	c) took	d) take
----------	-----------	---------	---------

WB
  
- 3. Heidi doesn't ..... with her parents. She lives with her grandfather.
 

a) live	b) lives	c) lived	d) living
---------	----------	----------	-----------
  
- 4. Maha ..... like swimming.
 

a) not	b) don't	c) doesn't	d) isn't
--------	----------	------------	----------
  
- 5. ..... your parents live in Giza?
 

a) Are	b) Do	c) Does	d) Have
--------	-------	---------	---------

T + F P. Ajmal
  
- 6. ..... you play chess?
 

a) Doing	b) Do	c) Did	d) Does
----------	-------	--------	---------

T + F P. Ajmal
  
- 7. How does Sami ..... when his father is at home?
 

a) feel	b) feels	c) felt	d) feeling
---------	----------	---------	------------

T + F P. Ajmal
  
- 8. What ..... you listen to on the radio?
 

a) does	b) are	c) were	d) do
---------	--------	---------	-------

T + F P. Ajmal
  
- 9. This bird ..... beautiful colours.
 

a) have	b) has	c) having	d) to have
---------	--------	-----------	------------

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. She is watching a nice programme every evening. (....)
- 2. Does he gets up early? (....)
- 3. Ali don't play football after school. (....)
- 4. Does you walk to school? (....)
- 5. My father be in France for a holiday. (....)
- 6. Where are you come from? (....)

## Time to Practise



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. Reham is good at tennis. She ..... it every day.

T - فـي العـالـى

a) plays      b) play      c) playing      d) played

2. Mona ..... go to school on Friday.

T - فـي الـعـاـمـاـجـى

a) don't      b) isn't      c) hasn't      d) doesn't

3. We both ..... English books in the evenings.

الـفـلـطـرـةـةـ

a) is reading      b) are reading      c) read      d) reads

4. Fawzi and Hamdi ..... painting.

T - فـي الـعـاـمـاـجـى

a) love      b) loves      c) loving      d) be loved

5. They ..... a lot of milk.

T - فـي العـالـى

a) drinks      b) don't drink      c) aren't drink      d) drinking

6. What sport ..... like?

T - فـي الـعـالـى

a) you don't      b) don't you      c) doesn't you      d) you doesn't

7. I don't ..... to music.

الـسـمـاعـهـاـتـ

a) listens      b) listen      c) listening      d) listened

8. ..... Adel at home now?

الـسـمـاعـهـاـتـ

a) Is      b) Does      c) Do      d) Has

9. Samy ..... go to school on Saturdays.

T - فـي الـعـاـمـاـجـى

a) don't      b) doesn't      c) hasn't      d) isn't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I doesn't usually listen to pop music.

( ..... ) T - فـي العـالـى

2. Monkeys makes a lot of noise.

( ..... ) المـدـحـوـهـاـتـ

3. What subject does he studied?

( ..... ) T - فـي الـعـالـى

4. What do her hobbies?

( ..... ) الـصـافـهـهـاـتـ

5. I has my breakfast at school.

( ..... ) الـسـكـنـهـاـتـ

6. Are you speak English well?

( ..... ) الـاسـكـنـهـاـتـ

لحل المزید من التدريبات. فم بـاجـاهـةـاـتـ Quiz الحـاـصـ بـكـلـ دـرـسـيـنـ فـيـ مـلـحـفـ التـقـوـيمـ بـعـدـ اـسـتـشـارـةـ مـعـلـمـكـ



## D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تكثير الاطفال  
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



### 1. Speaking

#### Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن المهوايات

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	حالة الرد
-----------	-----------------------	----------	-----------

<b>Do you listen to music?</b>	عند سؤال شخص عما إذا كان يمارس هواية أم لا يستخدم الصيغة التالية هل تسمع إلى الموسيقى؟
<b>No, I don't.</b>	لـ.
<b>Where does your father work?</b>	إن يعمل والدك يعمل في بنك بالقاهرة
<b>How long does it take you to come to school?</b>	ما طول المدة التي تستغرقها لك تأمين إلى المدرسة حوالي ٣٠ دقيقة.

#### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

#### Complete the following dialogue:

##### ► Noha is asking Soha about her day.

**Noha :** Hello, Soha. How are you?

**Soha :** (1) .

**Noha :** (2) ?

**Soha :** I get up at 6 a.m.

**Noha :** (3)..... ?

**Soha :** I go to school by bus.

**Noha :** What do you do on Fridays?

**Soha :** (4).....

**Noha :** Do you enjoy your time?

**Soha :** (5).....



## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب  
من كتابة مقالة بشكل جيد.



### 1. How to write about a member of your family

- My (.....'s) name is (الاسم).
- He's (العمر) years old.
- He lives in (المكان).
- He is (الوظيفة).
- His hobbies are (الهوايات).

#### Writing tips

A paragraph should have at least 10 sentences.

يجب أن يحتوي المقالة على عشر جمل.

#### - Example

#### My grandfather

My name is Omar. I'm twelve years old. I have a big family. My grandfather's name is Kamal. He's 65 years old. He lives on a farm in Benha. He's a farmer. He grows apples. His favourite food is fish and rice. His hobbies are reading and fishing. I love him so much because he is friendly and kind. He always helps me and the other members of the family. We usually visit him at the weekend. He tells us interesting stories. He helps us grow different plants on his farm. I'm really proud of him.

### 2. How to write about your hobby

كيفية الكتابة عن هواياتك

- I like playing (اللعبة/الرياضة).
- I play (اللعبة/الرياضة) every week.
- I play it with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- I play it at the (المكان).
- It's my favourite.

#### - Example

#### The hobby I like

It's really important to do a hobby when you are free. There are many hobbies to do in life. Everyone has a different hobby. Some people like sports and others like reading, but I like playing chess. It's a game for all ages. This game is for two people. I like to play it on Fridays. I play it with my friends at home. I can play it online with people all over the world. My grandfather taught me how to play chess. Sometimes, I play it on the computer. I like it very much. It's my favourite.

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 1

LESSON  
12-40



## 1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amgad. I live with my family in Giza. I have one sister. She is a student at preparatory school. She goes to school at 8:00 a.m. and returns home at 3:00 p.m. My father is an accountant. He works for a big company. He gets up very early and goes to his work. He comes back home at night. My mother is a teacher. She teaches geography. I get up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I stay at home with my grandmother. I would like to be six to go to school and meet my friends.

### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage about? ....
2. Where does Amgad's father work? ....
3. Why do you think Amgad doesn't get up early? ....

### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The family lives in .....  
**a)** the countryside    **b)** a city    **c)** a village    **d)** the desert
5. The underlined word "She" refers to Amgad's .....  
**a)** teacher    **b)** sister    **c)** grandmother    **d)** mother
6. Amgad wants to be six to go to .....  
**a)** school    **b)** home    **c)** a company    **d)** a farm

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is a room at the top of the house.  
**a)** kitchen    **b)** break    **c)** attic    **d)** garage
2. A/An ..... is a child with no father or mother.  
**a)** twin    **b)** orphan    **c)** driver    **d)** happy
3. When the weather is hot, we go to the .....  
**a)** beach    **b)** desert    **c)** moon    **d)** sun
4. Mona is not making a video ....., but she is talking to her friend.  
**a)** cell    **b)** call    **c)** photo    **d)** line
5. My uncle travelled to a lot of countries like England and .....  
**a)** Rome    **b)** France    **c)** London    **d)** Paris
6. It's an adventure to ..... a mountain.  
**a)** climb    **b)** do    **c)** go    **d)** walk

**7.** I play ..... my friends in the club.  
 a) in                    b) of                    c) at                    d) with

**8.** Soha ..... go swimming on windy days.  
 a) don't              b) isn't                c) aren't              d) doesn't

**9.** Does Hala ..... playing tennis?  
 a) like                b) likes                c) liked                d) to like

**10.** She ..... shopping every week.  
 a) goes                b) go                    c) going                d) gone

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

**1.** Does you listen to music every day? (.....) *أنت ت LISTEN*

**2.** Does Sama has a blue dress? (.....) *لدي فستان أزرق*

**3.** He doesn't plays tennis. (.....) *يلعب TENNIS*

**4.** I am not very good in drawing. (.....) *جيد الرسم*

**4** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your father"



**Challenging Questions**

Read and correct the underlined words:

محب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**1**) Do you ready for the concert? (.....)

**2**) What sport are you good? (.....)

**3**) Adel has a car, so he goes to work by bus. (.....)

**4**) A: Is Salma happy? B: No, she isn't sad. (.....)

**STUDY****Lessons 5 & 6**

SB pages 9-11 | WB pages 76 - 78

**A Vocabulary****Key Vocabulary**

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	gymnastics (n)	المفردات الرئيسية
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	Olympics (n)	الألعاب الأولمبية
balance (d) (v)	يوازن	the country (n)	الريف
best friend	أفضل صديق	top (n/adj)	أفضل / أول
gymnast (n)	لاعب / لاعنة جهاز	train (for) (ed) (v)	يتدرب (للمدة)

**Additional Vocabulary**

busy life	حياة مشغولة / مزدحمة	physics (n)	المفردات الاضافية
description (n)	وصف	swimming pool (n)	الفيزياء
nearby (adj/adv)	محاورة	work (ed) (v) hard	حوض السباحة

**Choose and complete:** best gymnastics physics

يمهد هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والأضافية

1 I like ..... It's my favourite subject.

2 Adel is my ..... friend. He's a lot of fun.

**Language Expressions****التعابير اللعوبية**

achieve > dreams	يتحقق أحلاماً	have > food/a drink	يتناول طعاماً / شرباً
find > difficult	يجد صعوبة	stay > strong	يقوى قوياً

**Prepositions****حروف الجر**

a photo of صورة ل move to ينتقل إلى

**Words and Opposites****الكلمات و عكسها**

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
strong	قوياً	weak	ضعيف

## Choose and complete: weak - strong - of

1 That's a photo ..... my best friend.

2 The lion is a ..... animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس مهارات  
للتعميرات اللغوية  
وحرف الجر.

درس الملاحظات اللغوية حيث  
لأنها موضع اسلمة اصيادي.

## Language Notes

1 so that + فاعل + can/could + inf. لكتن

- Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.
- I went to England so that I could learn English.

2 physics/ mathematics/ gymnastics/ athletics

بعض الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ (ics) هي أسماء مفردة

- Gymnastics is a difficult sport.

## Vocabulary Builder

درء امراضي للدراسة  
والفهم وليس للحفظ

## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفتها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفتها
healthy	صح	well	بصحة جيدة
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	الوظيفة	اللاحقة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	-ics	تحويل اسم الفاعل		athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
gymnast (n)	لاعبة جمباز		اسم		gymnastics (n)	ألعاب الجمباز

## Prefix البادئة

Prefix	Function	الوظيفة	البادئة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى			healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا درء يوصي لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في المعنى ولكن مختلفة في المعنى
weak	ضعيف	week	أسبوع	
dreams	أحلام	drums	طبول	

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-reading question:

- How can we keep fit?

Lesson 6

Read about Habiba Marzouk. Which sport makes her happy? SB page 10

### Habiba Marzouk achieves her dreams

Habiba Marzouk is a **gymnast**<sup>(3)</sup>. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she **trains** for five or six hours. She is a **top** gymnast in Africa and she wants to go to the **Olympics**<sup>(6)</sup>.



- ١ بحفل / يجر (١)
- ٢ احلام
- ٣ دعوة حمسار
- ٤ بدرة
- ٥ افضل ون
- ٦ الالعاب الاولمبية
- ٧ اصحاب الحمسار

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong. **Gymnastics** is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.



### Note:

تعلم كمية نطق الكلمات التالية:

gymnast /dʒɪmnæst/    gymnastics /dʒɪmnæstriks/    Olympics /ə'lɪmpɪks/

### Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Habiba is happy?

### Read and punctuate.

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.

WB Page 77



### Pre-reading question:

lesson 7

- What's your best friend's name?

Read and complete the text about Ali's sister Lamia.

SB page 11



My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I **live** in Aswan with my family. My parents **are** teachers. My brother Ali **is** 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled **goes** swimming every Friday.

I **listen** to music with **my** brothers. Ali **plays** football at school and he **watches** football matches on TV. Khaled **goes** swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend **is** called Aya. We **play** basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. **Our** team is very good!

### Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Lamia lives a healthy life? Why/Why not?

Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

WB Page 78

Munir and Mustafa are twins. **Their** sister is called Radwa. **Her** hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with **my** brother and **his** name is Sayed. **Our** house is in Cairo. What is **your** best friend's name?

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercise

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practice more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Habiba Marzouk is a famous .....  
a) gymnastic      b) gymnastics      c) gym      d) gymnast

2. A baby bird is very ..... It can't fly for many days.  
a) poor      b) weak      c) week      d) strong

3. Fresh food is good for you and it is .....  
a) unhealthy      b) bad      c) healthy      d) deadly

4. Habiba Marzouk wants to ..... her dreams and go to the Olympics.  
a) give      b) play      c) check      d) achieve

5. Habiba eats well because ..... is a difficult sport.  
a) gym      b) gymnastics      c) gymnast      d) gymnasium

6. Ahmed has a very ..... life. He goes to school and studies hard all the time.  
a) ugly      b) free      c) busy      d) dirty

7. Athletes work hard to ..... their studies and their sport.  
a) bring      b) spell      c) destroy      d) balance

8. As a gymnast, she ..... for 5 or 6 hours daily.  
a) trains      b) teaches      c) studies      d) swims

9. Eating healthy food helps us to ..... strong.  
a) find      b) stay      c) achieve      d) move

10. We usually have ..... when we sleep.  
a) habits      b) hobbies      c) drums      d) dreams

11. I like to live in the ..... because it's quiet.  
a) country      b) city      c) town      d) attic

12. She is a top gymnast and she wants to go to the .....  
a) physics      b) athletics      c) Olympics      d) gymnastics

13. My father always ..... a drink after dinner.  
a) eats      b) has      c) trains      d) moves



## C Skills

يهدف هذا الجرء إلى تعميق الطالب من حل لسلة المحادثة بشكل جيد

### Speaking

#### Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	حمله البرد
	What's his/her name?	ما اسمه / اسمها	
	My best friend's name is (.....). (.....)	اسم صديقه/ صديقتى المفضل هو (.....)	
	How old is he/she?	كم عمره / عمرها	
	He's/She's (العمر) years old.	عمره / عمرها ..... عاما	
	Where does he/she live?	أين يعيش / تعيش؟	
	He/She lives in (المكان).	يعيش يعيش في .....	
	What are his/her hobbies?	ما هواياته/ هواياتها	
	His/Her hobbies are (الهوايات).	هواياته/ هواياتها هي ..... (الهوايات)	

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

#### Complete the following dialogue:

السؤال

► Ahmed is asking Omar about his best friend.

Ahmed : What is your best friend's name?

Omar : (1).....

Ahmed : Fares! (2)..... ?

Omar : He's 14 years old.

Ahmed : What does he like?

Omar : (3).....

Ahmed : Sports! (4)..... ?

Omar : His favourite sport is football.

Ahmed : Is he friendly and kind?

Omar : (5).....

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 1 lesson (6-26)



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali asks Hani about his best friend.

Ali : Who is your best friend, Hani?

Hani : (1) .....

Ali : (2) .....

Hani : He is 13. He is in the same classroom.

Ali : What are his hobbies?

Hani : (3) .....

Ali : (4) .....

Hani : His favourite sport is basketball.

Ali : Is he tall?

Hani : (5) .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Good students work hard to ..... their dreams in life.

a) forget      b) watch      c) fail      d) achieve

2. I eat healthy food to stay .....

a) weak      b) strong      c) unhealthy      d) poor

3. It's ..... to eat fruit and vegetables.

a) warm      b) dirty      c) unhealthy      d) healthy

4. Athletes work hard to ..... their studies, work and families.

a) practise      b) train      c) balance      d) achieve

5. My sister likes sports. She's a famous .....

a) gymnast      b) charger      c) orphan      d) jungle

6. The athlete is ..... hard to be in the next Olympics.

a) using      b) raining      c) travelling      d) training

7. She has a very busy ..... . She goes to school and studies hard.

a) live      b) life      c) alive      d) leaf

8. What ..... he like doing when he is at home?

a) do      b) does      c) is      d) are

9. My grandparents ..... in the city. They live in the country.

a) doesn't live      b) don't live      c) lives      d) live

10. London ..... in England.

a) is      b) am      c) are      d) be

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Where do your grandfather live? (.....)

2. Can you help my with the homework? (.....)

3. Do you busy today? (.....)

4. Ghada like healthy food. (.....)

**4** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your best friend and why you like him/ her"

 Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجانب عنده ملخص نهاية الكتاب

1 Famous people always ..... a very busy life.

a) move      b) find      c) stay      d) have

2 Some girls ..... it difficult to play football.

a) do      b) have      c) find      d) make

3 We usually visit our grandparents ..... Sunday evenings.

a) in      b) on      c) at      d) for

# Review on Unit 1

## Vocabulary

achieve (d)	يُحقق / يجذب	<b>Subject pronouns</b> مصادر الفاعل
gymnastics	الألعاب الجمباز	I/ We/ You/ He/ She/ It/ They
adventure	مغامرة	- They go to school by bus.
interview	مقابلة	<b>Object pronouns</b> مصادر المفعول
aged	مسنون من العمر	me/ us/ you/ him/ her/ it/ them
mountain	جبل	- I go to school with them.
athlete	لاعب رياضي	<b>Possessive adjectives</b> مصادر الملكية
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	my/ our/ your/ his/ her/ its/ their
attic	علبة المفبر / السقف	- Their bus moves at 7:30.
orphan	يتيم	<b>Possessive pronouns</b> مصادر الملكية
balance (d)	توازن	mine/ ours/ yours/ his/ hers/ theirs
band	فرقة	- This school is theirs.
twin	توأم	<b>The present simple tense:</b>
gymnast	لاعب جمباز	Affirmative • They play football.
voluntary work	عمل إلزامي	• He plays football.
daughter	ابنة	<b>Negative</b>
great-grandparents	آباء الآباء	• They don't play football.
great-grandchildren	أبناء الآباء	• He doesn't play football.
uncle	عم - عمة / عمدة / أمي	<b>Questions:</b>
parents	والدان	• Do they play football?
grandchildren	أحفاد	• Does he play football?

## Language

### Skills

#### Ask and answer questions

#### about hobbies

#### السؤال والاجابة عن المهobiات

**A:** Do you listen to music?  
**B:** No, I don't.

**A:** Where does your father work?  
**B:** He works in a bank in Cairo.

**A:** How long does it take you to come to school?  
**B:** It takes about 30 minutes.

### Talking about your best friend

#### التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

#### What's his/her name?

#### My best friend's name is .

#### How old is he/she?

#### He/She's ..... years old

#### Where does he/she live?

#### He/She lives in .....!

#### What are his/her hobbies?

#### His/Her hobbies are .







## 6 Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Salim. I'm thirteen years old. My best friend is called Salah. He and I study together. His home is only a ten-minute walk from my place. He is funny and **friendly**. We are always happy to be with each other. He is always kind and helpful to me. When I don't go to school because I'm ill, he comes to my house to ask about me. When he doesn't come to school, I ask about **him**. We also play football together on Fridays. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.
2. Why do you think Salim likes Salah?
3. What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Salim and Salah are ..... .
 

a) sisters	b) brothers	c) students	d) teachers
------------	-------------	-------------	-------------
5. The underlined word "friendly" means ..... .
 

a) strong	b) well	c) kind	d) healthy
-----------	---------	---------	------------
6. Salah's house is ..... Salim's house.
 

a) near	b) far	c) opposite	d) behind
---------	--------	-------------	-----------



## 7 Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These brothers are the same age. They are ..... .
 

a) cousins	b) sisters	c) twins	d) parents
------------	------------	----------	------------
2. Your dad's brother is your ..... .
 

a) uncle	b) aunt	c) sister	d) brother
----------	---------	-----------	------------
3. People do ..... work without getting money.
 

a) voluntary	b) business	c) group	d) job
--------------	-------------	----------	--------

4. Every day, Heidi walks in the ..... with the goats.  
 a) airports      b) mountains      c) schools      d) pools

5. She is a/an ..... girl. She lost her father.  
 a) busy      b) orphan      c) ugly      d) happy

6. Murad works hard to ..... his dreams.  
 a) achieve      b) archive      c) receive      d) believe

7. I ..... a lot to play the guitar well.  
 a) take      b) sleep      c) achieve      d) train

8. A: Which house is yours? B: ..... is next door.  
 a) Yours      b) My      c) Ours      d) Their

9. Basel doesn't ..... the piano. He plays the flute.  
 a) play      b) plays      c) played      d) playing

10. Amira ..... with her family in Damietta.  
 a) to live      b) living      c) lives      d) live

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Adel can't find him book.  
 (.....) Egypt 3000

2. The girl like her teacher so much.  
 (.....) Egypt 3000

3. Gymnastics are my favourite sport.  
 (.....) Egypt 3000

4. What sport do you good at?  
 (.....) Egypt 3000



### Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"Your favourite hobby"**



Assess your  
progress



50%

50-64%

65-84%

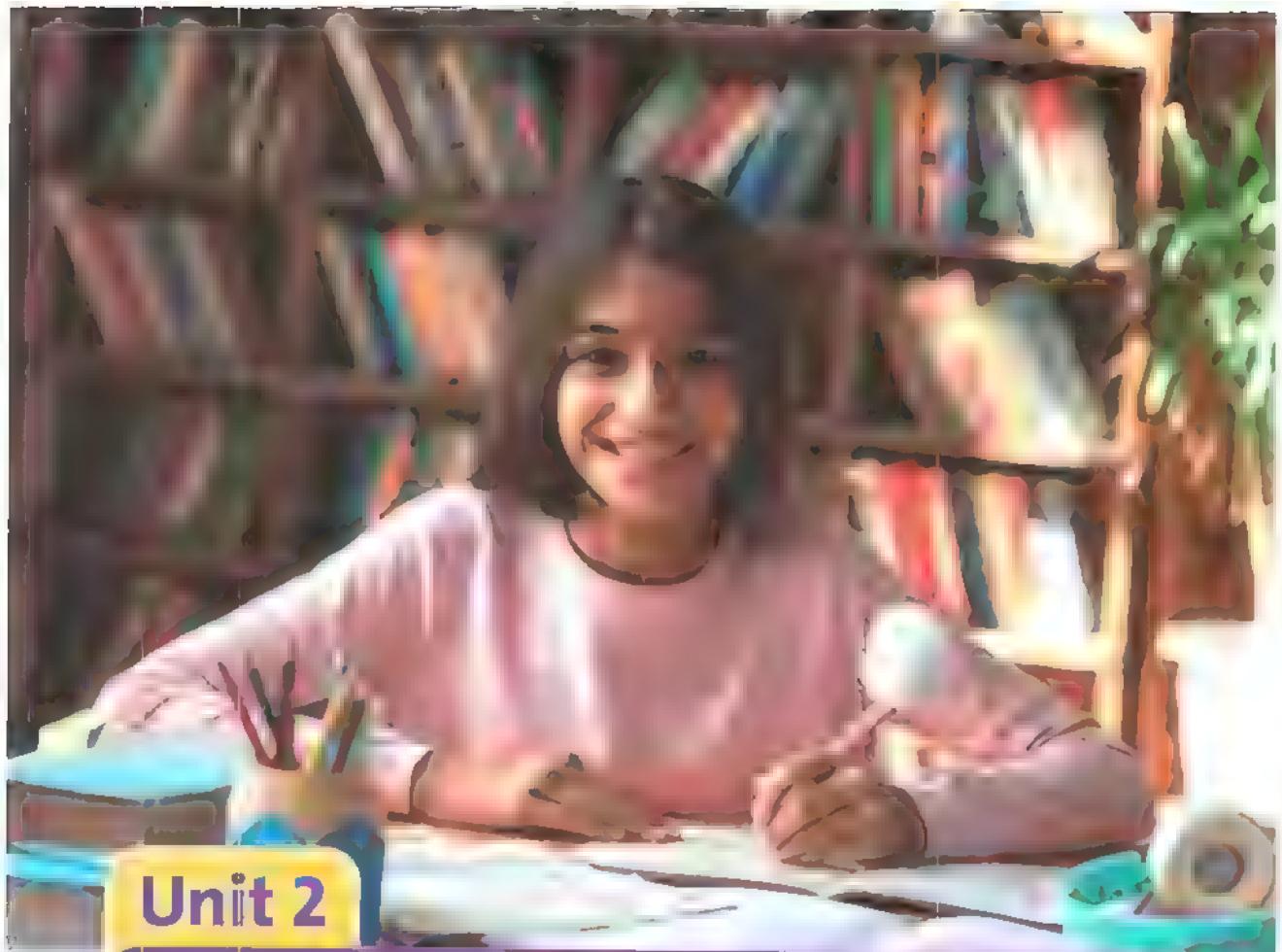
85-100%

[Study again](#)

[Practise more](#)

[Solve more quizzes](#)

[Well done!](#)



## Unit 2

# It's my favourite subject

### *Objectives of the unit*

**Reading** Descriptions of schools around the world



**Writing** A paragraph about your journey to school, A paragraph about your daily life

**Listening** A discussion about timetables

**Speaking** Asking and answering about school and timetables

**Language** Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'

**Life Skills** Critical thinking; self-management



## A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية
- قم باخصار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسليم الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس

### Key Vocabulary

bell (n)	جرس	library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة)
daily life	الحياة اليومية	playground (n)	ملعب
far away	بعيدة	timetable (n)	جدول الحصص
hall (n)	صالة/قاعة	typical (adj)	معتاد/نموذج/مثالي
head teacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

### School subjects

Arabic (n)	اللغة العربية	maths (n)	الرياضيات
art (n)	التربية الفنية/الرسم	music (n)	التربية الموسيقية
computer studies (n)	دراسات الحاسوب	religion (n)	الدين
drama (n)	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)	science (n)	العلوم
English (n)	اللغة الإنجليزية	social studies (n)	الدراسات الاجتماعية
home economics (n)	الاقتصاد المنزلي		

### Additional Vocabulary

different (adj)	مختلف	road (n)	طريق
half past	ونصف	student (n)	طالب
quarter past	وربع	study (y ied) (v)	يدرس/يذاكر
quarter to	لا ربع	trip (n)	رحلة

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

sport – subject – library

1 We read books in the school.

2 My favourite ..... is science.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
لمفردات امتحانية  
والإضافية

## Language Expressions

## العبارات اللغوية

do > homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي	have > a lesson	لديه حصة
get > home	يصل إلى البيت	breakfast	يتناول الإفطار
live > in Nairobi	يعيش في مدينة سروبرن	take > a long time	سنعرف وقتها طويلاً

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

at break	في الفسحة	It's time for ...	حان الوقت لـ ...
get to	يصل إلى	ways of	طرق لـ



Choose and complete:

do - at - for - have

1 I play with my friends  break.

2 I  my homework in the evening.

3 I  my breakfast with my friends at school.

محدث هذا التدريب  
قياس فهمك  
لستيرن لغوبنه  
و دروس ايجر

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
choose يختار	chose	chosen	mean يعني	meant	meant
get up ينبعض/يسقط	got up	got up	ring يرن/يدق	rang	rung
hear يسمع	heard	heard	have لديك/عندك	had	had

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعکسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different مختلف	the same		نفس الشيء
far away بعيداً	near		قريب
start يبدأ	finish		ينتهي
typical معتاد/نموذجية/مثالية	unusual		غير معتاد

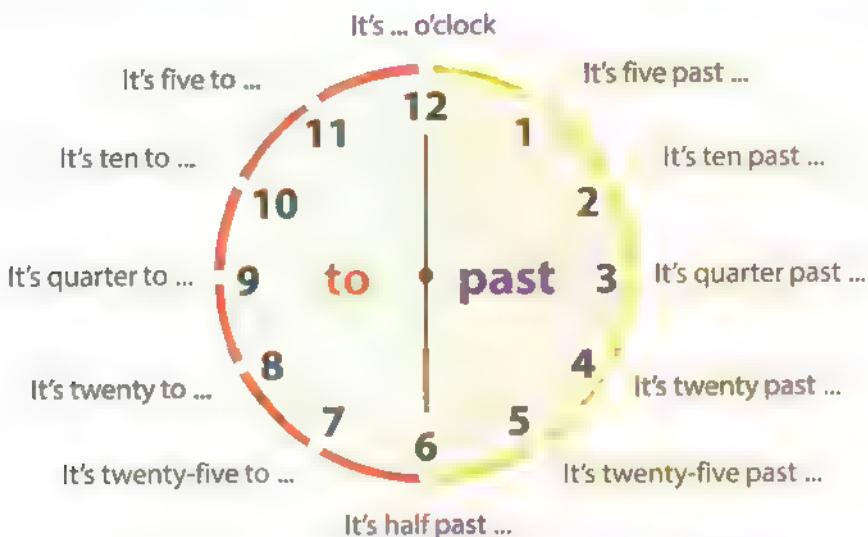
# Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع اسئلة امتحانية



طرق الإجبار عن الوقت:

## 1 Ways to tell/say the time:



## 2 computer studies – home economics – social studies – physics

- المواد الدراسية تعامل معاملة المفرد -

- Social studies **is** my favourite subject.
- Home economics **starts** at ten thirty on Sunday.

## 3 drive + شخص

يوصى شخصاً بالسيارة

- My father always drives me to school.

## 4 first أولاً / then ثم / second الثاني / next التالي

نستخدم الكلمات السابقة عند سرد أحداث أو رواية قصة

- First, I visited my grandmother.
- Then, I met my friends in the club.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Check Point

1 Physics ..... my favourite subject.

a) am      b) is      c) are      d) does

2 My mum has a meeting at ..... past nine next Sunday.

a) half      b) have      c) halve      d) quieter

3 To get the opposite of "usual", we add the prefix "....."

a) im-      b) a-      c) in-      d) un-

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء اثراوى للحراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



## Definitions

bell	it rings when <sup>(1)</sup> a lesson starts and finishes	جرس	
hall	it is a big room for a lot of students and teachers	قاعة/صالة	عدها (1)
library	you can find a lot of books here	مكتبة (للقراءة)	لطلاب (2)
playground	it is in a school. You play games here	ملعب	كبير من (3)

## التعريفات

## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
start		begin	يبدأ
typical	نماذجى/مثالى/معتاد	usual	معتاد

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent		تحول الفعل لصفة		different (adj)	مختلف
teach (v)	يدرس/يعلم	-er		تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل		teacher (n)	مدرس

## Prefix البداءة

Prefix	البداءة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		usual (adj)	معتاد	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا الجدول يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المهجاء ولكن معناها مختلف
bell	جرس	bill	فاتورة	
hall	قاعة/صالة	hill	تل	
past	و	paste	معدون	

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-listening question:

- What do you like most about your school?

### Listen and complete the timetable.

**Amal** I like the new timetable<sup>(1)</sup>. What's your favourite day, Injy?

**Injy** I like Thursday. We have Social Studies<sup>(2)</sup> first on Thursday. Then we have English<sup>(3)</sup> and then we go to Science<sup>(4)</sup>. That's my favourite subject.

**Amal** My favourite day's today. We have Maths<sup>(5)</sup> first and second lesson after break today. I love Maths! Then we have Science and Art<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Injy** I like Art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow?

**Amal** English, then Religion<sup>(7)</sup> is next, then Arabic<sup>(8)</sup> and then Home Economics<sup>(9)</sup>. After break, we have Social Studies. Then we have Science and Computer Studies<sup>(10)</sup>. Finally, we have Music<sup>(11)</sup>.

**Injy** When do we have Drama<sup>(12)</sup>?

**Amal** That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!



### Note:

social /səʊʃəl/    economics /i:kənɒmɪks/    religion /rɪlɪdʒən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

### SB page 13

- (1) جدوب الحصص
- (2) المباحثات الاجتماعية
- (3) اللغة، (إنجليزية)
- (4) العلوم
- (5) الرياضيات
- (6) لرسم
- (7) الدين
- (8) اللغة العربية
- (9) الاقتصاد المغربي
- (10) دراسات الأقليات
- (11) الموسوعات
- (12) الدراما

### Post-listening questions:

- 1 What's Injy's favourite subject?
- 2 Do you think Injy and Amal like Drama? Why?

**Pre-reading question:** How long does it take to go to school?

Read the text again and answer the questions.

SB page 14

## Daily life around the world



"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical <sup>(1)</sup> day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away <sup>(2)</sup>, so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell <sup>(3)</sup> at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall <sup>(4)</sup>. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground<sup>(5)</sup>, but sometimes we go to the library <sup>(6)</sup> to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"

(1) معتاد، معتاد

(2) بعيداً جداً

(3) درس

(4) صالة مفتوحة

(5) ملعب (أثناء المدرسة)

(6) مكتبة المدرسة



### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Nairobi /na'rəʊbi/      typical /tɪpɪkəl/

**Post-reading question:**

- How do you think Akeyo feels when she returns home?

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



### ► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is the subject of how to learn numbers. ٢٠٢٢ الشريحة  
a) Art      b) Maths      c) Arabic      d) Music

2. My son is good at ..... . He can draw pictures. ٢٠٢٣ الجزء  
a) English      b) Arabic      c) Maths      d) Art

3. We use a mouse in ..... lessons. ٢٠٢٣ المنهج  
a) Arabic      b) art      c) maths      d) computer studies

4. We learn about countries in ..... lessons. ٢٠٢٣ الفنون  
a) social studies      b) religion      c) maths      d) computer studies

5. The opposite of "the same" is "...". ٢٠٢٣ الكلمات  
a) similar      b) different      c) equal      d) alike

6. For homework, we often read books from the ..... . WB  
a) laboratory      b) library      c) playground      d) hall

7. I usually get up at half ..... six.   
a) past      b) post      c) paste      d) to

8. I ..... Arabic and English on Sunday.   
a) go      b) make      c) have      d) stay

9. I go to school library at ..... . ٢٠٢٣ المنهج  
a) break      b) brake      c) park      d) bark

10. On a ..... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library. ٢٠٢٣ الشارع  
a) hard      b) musical      c) bad      d) typical

11. We learn about food in home ..... . ٢٠٢٣ الجرعة  
a) studies      b) economics      c) gymnastics      d) physics

12. We have eight ..... on a school day.   
a) lessons      b) numbers      c) languages      d) bells

13. All the children in our school go to the ..... when the head teacher wants to talk to us. WB  
a) bell      b) hall      c) library      d) playground

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Social studies and science are school ..... .  
a) objects      b) subjects      c) teams      d) groups
2. At break, I play games with my friend in the ..... .  
a) hall      b) classroom      c) playground      d) office
3. You can look at the ..... to know how many lessons you'll have today.  
a) desk      b) chair      c) timetable      d) bag
4. What's your ..... subject?  
a) favourite      b) favour      c) fat      d) heavy
5. I'm not very good ..... English.  
a) in      b) at      c) on      d) of
6. ..... is an interesting subject.  
a) English      b) Gym      c) Volleyball      d) Handball
7. I usually ..... my homework before I sleep.  
a) say      b) give      c) make      d) do
8. It's half ..... seven. It's time for school.  
a) past      b) pass      c) to      d) too
9. She's great at ..... . She likes art.  
a) watching      b) playing      c) swimming      d) drawing
10. We study people and how they live in the ..... lessons.  
a) science      b) social studies      c) maths      d) drama
11. I usually ..... lunch at home with my family.  
a) do      b) get      c) have      d) make
12. We have English first on Monday. .... we have Arabic.  
a) Last      b) Past      c) Then      d) After
13. A ..... is a big room for a lot of students and teachers.  
a) hill      b) hall      c) bell      d) hole

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحة التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

# C Language

## Adverbs of frequency

مفردات التكرار



التكوين والاستخدام: التكوين والاستخدام:

They're used to say how often we do things, or how often things happen.

ستستخدم ظروف التكرار للتغيير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، وستستخدم مع رموز المصادر البسيط.

نعلم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي كال التالي:

Subject + adv. + inf./verb + s, es, ies

Ex: • We usually play football on Mondays.

• Amr sometimes goes to school by bus.

• I always walk to school.

• Sally never gets up late.



١- يمكن استخدام sometimes اول الجملة اي قبل الفاعل.

• Sometimes, we go to the library to read books.

٢- مع (verb to be) يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) كال التالي:

Subject + am/is/are + adv. (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة).

They are usually late.

• Mona is always clever.

٣- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (كم مرة) (How often) كال التالي:

<b>How often</b> +	do > (you – we – they – اسم جمع) does > (he – she – it – اسم مفرد)	– + inf. + ...?
-----------------------	---	-----------------

A: How often do Akeyo and her brother walk to school? B: They never walk to school.



تمكنت هذه الجريمة من التعرف على كيفية ايجابية سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعاة بأسباب الإيجابية للتغيير فهمك للدرس.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Students go never to school on Fridays.

( )

- الإجابة الصحيحة (never go) لأن ظرف التكرار ينسق الفعل الرئيسي للجملة.



## D Skills

يهدف هذا الدرس إلى تعميق الطالب من  
حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



### 1. Speaking

#### Asking and answering about school and timetables

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجدول الحصص

##### Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

##### Response

حملة الرد

	What's your favourite subject?	ما هي مادتك المفضلة؟
	I like maths./My favourite subject is social studies. أحب الرياضيات/مادتي المفضلة هي الدراسات الاجتماعية.	
	How many lessons do you have every day?	كم عدد الحصص التي لديك يومياً؟
	I have seven lessons every day. لدي سبع حصص يومياً.	
	Are you good at maths?	هل أنت جيد في الرياضيات؟
	Yes, I am. نعم.	
	What time is the break?	متى تكون الفسحة؟
	It's at eleven o'clock. في الحادية عشرة تماماً.	

#### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

#### Complete the following dialogue:

الطبقة ٢٠٢٢

► Judy is asking Jana about her favourite subject.

Judy : How are you, Jana?

Jana : (1).....

Judy : What's your favourite subject?

Jana : (2).....

Judy : Are you good at science?

Jana : (3).....

Judy : (4).....?

Jana : Science lesson starts after break on Sunday.

Judy : (5).....?

Jana : It finishes at twelve o'clock.



## 2. Write it right

### How to write about your day/daily life

- My name's (الاسم).
- I go to a preparatory school in (المكان).
- I usually get up at (الساعة).
- I often (فعل) in the morning.
- I always (فعل) after school.
- I usually (فعل) with my friends.
- We sometimes go out in the evening.
- I never (فعل) on school days.

يهدف هذا الحدث إلى تعميق الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

كيف تكتب عن يومك/حياتك اليومية

### Writing tips

A paragraph has:

- a topic sentence.
- supporting sentences.
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:

- جملة رئيسية

- حمل مساعدة وموجهة لموضوع

- جملة نلخصية (تلخص المفكرة الرئيسية للمقولة)

### Example

#### My daily life

My name's Bassem. I always have a busy day. I go to a preparatory school in Giza. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I wash my hands and face. Then I have my breakfast. I often walk to school in the morning. I go with my friends. I have seven lessons a day. I can do many activities during the break. When I finish school, I come back home at 2:30 p.m. I always do my homework after school. I usually meet my friends. We sometimes go out in the evening. I never sleep late on school days.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your day"

My name's .....



# TEST YOURSELF

## Unit 2

### Lessons 11-12

17

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** لص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. What is your mother's job?  
a) A nurse.      b) A doctor.      c) A teacher.      d) A cook.
2. How often do you go shopping?  
a) Often.      b) Always.  
c) Sometimes.      d) Never.
3. How often does your dad work at the weekend?  
a) Never.      b) Always.      c) Often.      d) Sometimes.
4. What does your dad work with?  
a) Mobiles.      b) Televisions.      c) Tablets.      d) Computers.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The bell ..... when a lesson starts and finishes.  
a) gets      b) means      c) hears      d) rings
2. It's half ..... seven. It's time for school.  
a) past      b) pass      c) to      d) too
3. Mostafa loves ..... art at school.  
a) eating      b) playing      c) doing      d) buying
4. ..... school days, I get up at half past six.  
a) On      b) At      c) In      d) Of
5. I usually ..... breakfast with my family.  
a) drink      b) do      c) have      d) tell
6. My dad always ..... us to school.  
a) has      b) chooses      c) arrives      d) drives
7. The road is always busy, so it ..... a long time to get there.  
a) has      b) takes      c) does      d) makes
8. Amira ..... her homework after dinner.  
a) does never      b) never is      c) is never      d) never does

١٢٣ - ٥٦

٥٦ - ١٢٣

**9. A:** ..... do you go out for lunch? **B:** I sometimes go out for lunch.

a) How many      b) How tall      c) How often      d) How long

**10. I** ..... get up late on holidays.

a) am sometimes    b) ever      c) every      d) usually

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

**1.** They often went to the theatre in summer. (.....)

**2.** Does you usually get up early? (.....)

**3.** My aunt does always the shopping on Friday. (.....)

**4.** They play in the club every day. They never go to the club. (.....)

**4** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"Your school day"**



**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجانب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**1** We have maths ..... break.

a) in      b) during      c) at      d) after

**2** Hala ..... her make-up in the morning.

a) never does    b) is never      c) never is      d) does never

**3** ..... Toka comes to school late.

a) Never      b) Always      c) Sometimes      d) When



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

notebook (n)	كراسة/دفتر	rules (n)	قواعد
pencil case (n)	مقلمة	uniform (n)	زي موحد
<b>Means/Forms of transport</b>			
boat (n)	قارب	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
canoe (n)	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو	snowmobile (n)	عربة الثلج
helicopter (n)	هيليكوبتر (طائرة عمودية)	train (n)	قطار

### Additional Vocabulary

camel (n)	جمل	road (n)	طريق
cap (n)	قبعة/كاب	shoes (n)	حذاء
football shirt (n)	قميص كرة قدم	snow (n)	جليد/ثلج
fun (n)	مرح/متعة	village (n)	قرية
office (n)	حجرة المكتب	winter (n)	الشتاء



**Choose and complete:** boat – summer – camel – winter

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ is a desert animal.
- 2 We cross the river using a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 It's very cold in \_\_\_\_\_.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية

## Language Expressions

## التعابيرات اللغوية

do > homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي	say > unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة
follow > school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	take > a journey	يقوم بحلة سفر

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

cycle to	يركب الدراجة إلى	on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من
in a canoe	في الزورق	on the right	على اليمين
on a snowmobile	في عربة الثلج	on time	في الوقت المحدد

## Check Point

Choose and complete: **on – do – say – to**

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعابيرات اللغوية  
وحروف الجر.

- 1 I cycle ..... school every day.
- 2 We never ..... unkind things to our classmates.
- 3 Hany should go to school ..... time.

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
forget	ينسى	forgot
wear	يرتدى	wore

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعدها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
cheap	رخيص الثمن	expensive	غالي الثمن
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
forget	ينسى	remember	يلذكر
kind	طيب	unkind	غير طيب
outside	خارج	inside	داخل
wear	يرتدى	take off	يخلع ملابسه

**Pre-reading question:**

- Is your journey to school difficult or easy?

**Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.**

**SB page 18**

### How do they go to school?

In some countries, children live a long way from their school.

They do not go to school by car<sup>(1)</sup>, bus<sup>(2)</sup> or train<sup>(3)</sup>.

عربة (1)	بريك الدراجة (4)
أتوبيس (2)	زورق (5)
قطار (3)	عربة الشحن (6)

1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle<sup>(4)</sup> to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.



2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe<sup>(5)</sup>. The canoe takes the children to school and back home again every day.



3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile<sup>(6)</sup>!



#### Note:

Uganda /ju:'gændə/  
canoe /kənu:/

village /vɪlɪdʒ/  
snowmobile/snoʊməbi:l/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

cycle /saɪkəl/

**Post-reading question:**

- Mention three ways children use to go to school.

**Pre-listening question:**

- How do you go to school?

 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.

SB page 18

**Narrator 2 : 1**

**Narrator** Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. (1)  عربة ترجمة

**Boy** When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick!

**Narrator 2 : 2**

**Narrator** These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe<sup>(1)</sup>. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

**Boy** Sometimes, when it rains a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.

**Narrator 2 : 3**

**Narrator** This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile<sup>(2)</sup>!

**Boy** It's cold, but it's fast—and fun!

**Post-listening questions:**

- 1 If you were a student in the USA, how would you find travelling to school on a snowmobile?
- 2 When the roads are busy, which is faster, a bus or a bike?

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People travel on a ..... when there is snow.  
a) foot      b) bike      c) canoe      d) snowmobile
2. Camels are very ..... They can carry 200 kilos of bags.  
a) weak      b) low      c) strong      d) poor
3. My aunt is very ..... She always gives me big presents.  
a) sad      b) kind      c) unkind      d) poor
4. Some children in Egypt ..... to school. Bikes are fantastic.  
a) cycle      b) play      c) meet      d) drive
5. The canoe ..... children to school and home again every day.  
a) drives      b) rides      c) takes      d) cycles
6. Cars, buses, planes and trains are means of .....  
a) report      b) airport      c) port      d) transport
7. We should ..... our school uniform during the school day.  
a) forget      b) wear      c) help      d) say
8. Students should ..... their homework every day.  
a) do      b) follow      c) put      d) say
9. Some students go to school ..... a canoe.  
a) by      b) on      c) in      d) at
10. The children in the USA ..... to school on a snowmobile.  
a) cycle      b) take      c) ride      d) travel
11. My mother gave me a red ..... to put my pens in.  
a) ruler      b) pencil case      c) notebook      d) timetable
12. We always ..... school rules.  
a) finish      b) fill      c) fail      d) follow
13. He doesn't want to help his friends. He is .....  
a) clever      b) busy      c) unkind      d) kind

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Riding bikes is a/an ..... way to travel.  
a) kind      b) unkind      c) unhealthy      d) healthy
2. We arrived ..... Luxor two days ago.  
a) in      b) at      c) on      d) with
3. They are polite. They never ..... unkind things to their friends.  
a) say      b) talk      c) laugh      d) listen
4. The opposite of "expensive" is "...".  
a) unhealthy      b) busy      c) cheap      d) unkind
5. He lives in a small ..... away from the city.  
a) village      b) country      c) lake      d) snow
6. A ..... takes people from one side of a lake to another.  
a) bike      b) canoe      c) snowmobile      d) car
7. My school is ..... the other side of the lake.  
a) from      b) in      c) at      d) on
8. A canoe is a kind of a ..... that goes on water.  
a) taxi      b) snowmobile      c) boat      d) tram
9. I ..... on my school uniform at 7 a.m.  
a) have      b) talk      c) take      d) put
10. When the roads are ..... , the bus is slow.  
a) strong      b) expensive      c) busy      d) cheap
11. They usually ..... to school. They go on foot.  
a) walk      b) cycle      c) drive      d) fly
12. The opposite of the word "safe" is "...".  
a) false      b) different      c) dangerous      d) expensive
13. School ..... should be followed.  
a) roles      b) rulers      c) rolls      d) rules

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة اذ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



# C Language

## Possessive-s's

المملوكة (s')

تستخدم (s') (s) للتعبير عن ملكية شخص/أشخاص لشيء ما:  
تستخدم (s') الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد غير المنتهي بـ (s)



- It's Adel's book.
- That's my friend's car.

تستخدم (s') الملكية بعد الاسم الجمجم الذي ليس آخره حرف (s) (جمع غير منظم).

- That is not the children's room.



- That's the teachers' room.
- This is a girls' school.
- It's Lamees' dress.

تستخدم (s') مع الاسم الجمجم المنتظم المنتهي بحرف (s)

يمكن استخدام (s') مع الاسم المفرد المنتهي بحرف (s).



١- لا تستخدم (s') مع الجماد.

- I repaired my car door.

٢- عند امتلاك شخصين او اكثر لشيء ما، نفع (s') على الاسم الاخير فقط:

- I know whose ruler this is. It has **Dalia and Azza's** names on it.

٣- عند إضافة (s') لبعض الوظائف تحول إلى أماكن:

محل الجزارة/baker's/chemist's/butcher's/الصيدلية

٤- عند السؤال عن الملكية تستخدم (ملك من/لمن) (Whose) كالتالي:

Whose + (object) + is/are ...?

A: Whose shoes are these?

B: They are Ali's shoes.



Got it ?



Read and correct the underlined words:

1 My father repaired the laptop's battery.

(.....)

تحميك هذه الدليلة من الاعرف على كيفية اجابة سؤال  
لتحريم الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الاجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (laptop battery) لأنه جماد فلا يتم إضافة (s').

2 Who's book is that?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Whose) لأنها تسأل عن الملكية.

3 This is Ayas' car.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Aya's) لأن Aya اسم مفرد غير منتم بـ s.



# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. This is ..... phone. It's new.

a) Ali

b) Alis

c) Ali's

d) Alis'

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

2. Mr. Samy is in the ..... room.

a) teachers'

b) teacher's

c) teachers

d) teacher

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

3. This is ..... bag.

a) Ahmeds

b) Ahmed's

c) Ahmeds'

d) Ahmed

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

4. Those are my ..... books.

a) children

b) childrens'

c) children's

d) children'

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

5. Her father is called Wael and her ..... name is Samar.

a) mother

b) mothers

c) mother's

d) mothers'

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

6. A: ..... dresses are these? B: They are Sara's.

a) Who's

b) Whose

c) Who

d) What

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

7. This car belongs to Ghada. It's ..... car.

a) Ghada's

b) Ghadas'

c) Ghadas

d) Ghada'

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

8. All students have their books. All the ..... books are on the table.

a) student's

b) students'

c) students

d) student

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

9. ..... English class starts at ten o'clock.

a) Thursday

b) Thursday's

c) Thursdays

d) Thursdays's

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

10. Ali broke the ..... leg yesterday.

a) table

b) table's

c) tables'

d) tables

٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. These are my sister shoes. She likes them.

(.....) ٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

2. My friend name is Rawda.

(.....) ٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

3. My sister goes to a girl's school.

(.....) ٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

4. The childrens' clothes are in that bag.

(.....) ٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

5. These are the boys football shirts. They want them.

(.....) ٢٠٢٣ بِحَالٍ

6. Nada's and Yara school is very big.

(.....)

## Time to Practise



**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1. This is ..... drum. He likes music.  
a) Hani'      b) Hanis      c) Hani's      d) Hanis'
- 2. Hala has got red hair. .... hair is very long.  
a) Halas      b) Hala's      c) Halas'      d) Hala
- 3. My father went to the mechanic to fix the ..... door.  
a) cars'      b) car's      c) car is      d) car
- 4. I had to wait in the ..... room till my father finished his work in the hospital.  
a) doctor      b) doctor's      c) doctors'      d) doctors
- 5. That is not my ball. It is the ..... ball.  
a) childrens'      b) childrens's      c) children      d) children's
- 6. We buy bread at the .....  
a) baker's      b) bakers      c) bakers's      d) baker
- 7. ..... family is from Tanta.  
a) Sara      b) Sara's      c) Saras'      d) Saras
- 8. A: ..... cap is it? B: It's mine.  
a) What      b) Whose      c) When      d) Who's
- 9. My mum and dad sleep here. This is my ..... room.  
a) parents'      b) parent's      c) parents      d) parent
- 10. Chess is my ..... favourite game. It's his hobby.  
a) cousin's      b) cousins      c) cousin      d) cousins'

**2 Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1. We found Mona bag. (.....) المونا
- 2. The girl's names are Hanen and Marwa. (.....) المعنودة
- 3. A: Can you see Kamal's and Amir classroom?  
B: It is on the right. (.....) WB
- 4. My uncles favourite sport is basketball. (.....) الاسكندرية
- 5. My cousin's house is over there. I love them. (.....)
- 6. We can buy meat at the butcher. (.....) القاهرة

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معالم.





## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تفعيل الطالب  
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### 1. How to write about your journey to school

كيفية الكتابة عن رحلتك إلى المدرسة

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- I go to school with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- My school is (near/ far from) my house.
- I travel to school by (الوسيلة).

#### Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

قبل البدء في الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

#### Example

##### My school journey

My name's Marwa. In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train. I live in Luxor. I go to school with my friends. I'm in preparatory one at school. My school is far from my house, so we never walk to school. We travel to school by ferry. It takes about an hour to arrive at school. The ferry is very nice. We cross the river to get there. It's not an easy journey. The ferry takes us to school and home again every day. I get home at three o'clock. I like my journey to school.

#### 2. How to write about your weekend

كيفية الكتابة عن عطلتك الأسبوعية

- At the weekend, I go to (المكان).	- I go with (الأشخاص).
- We go there by (وسيلة المواصلات).	- We go back home (الوجه).
- We always have a good time.	

#### Example

##### My weekend

My name's Tamer. I live in Cairo with my family. At the weekend, I go to my grandfather's farm. It's in Giza. I go there with my family. We usually go in my father's car. I like the farm. I help my grandfather plant apples. My brother likes farm animals. He watches them and gives them water. My sister helps my grandmother make lunch. My parents go for a walk to enjoy the green trees there. We always have a good time. It's a lot of fun.

# TEST YOURSELF



## Unit 2

Lessons  
(3 & 4)



### 1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives ***near*** his school, so he goes there on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass the exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people. He also likes visiting new places. His favourite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. His favourite sport is football.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. How often does Nabil go to the school library? .....
3. What kind of books do you think Nabil likes to read? .....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nabil likes meeting ..... people.	a) bad	b) clever	c) unkind	d) unhappy
5. The underlined pronoun " <b><i>His</i></b> " refers to .....	a) food	b) Nabil's father	c) Nabil	d) sport
6. The opposite of the word " <b><i>near</i></b> " is .....	a) far	b) close	c) nearby	d) crowded

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My school ..... is a white shirt and blue pants.	a) rule	b) uniform	c) form	d) picture
2. The train left Cairo at 7 o'clock and soon we ..... in Giza.	a) walked	b) arrived	c) got	d) went
3. At school, we have many ..... to follow.	a) subjects	b) sports	c) rules	d) rooms
4. We usually cycle ..... school.	a) to	b) at	c) in	d) on
5. There is a nice park ..... the other side of the road.	a) in	b) with	c) on	d) to
6. It's ..... to travel on a snowmobile. I like it very much.	a) fun	b) busy	c) unkind	d) unhealthy

7. I like to ..... to school, it's healthier and costs no money.

a) swim      b) drive      c) cycle      d) fly

Room "1" is the ..... office. His name is Mr Ibrahim.

a) teachers      b) teachers'      c) teacher      d) teacher's

..... brother is a good tennis player.

a) Waleed      b) Waleed'      c) Waleed's      d) Waleeds

. We buy medicine at the .....

a) chemist's      b) chemists'      c) chemists      d) chemist



**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

**1.** A: Who bag is this? B: It's Hadeer's. (.....)

**2.** Yesterday match was boring. (.....)

**3.** This is Sandy laptop. (.....)

**4.** This is a shop for mens clothes. (.....)



| Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

## **"How children go to school and why"**



#### **Challenging Questions**

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

محاب عنهم في نهاية الكتاب

**1** What is today date, Mazin? (.....)

**2** The chemist is the place where I buy medicine. (.....)

**3** My grandparents' farm is big. He bought it 10 years ago. (.....)

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثبات للدراسة والفهم وليس الحفظ.



## Definitions

### التعريفات

an email	رسالة بريد الكتروني	it is a simple <sup>(1)</sup> message sent through <sup>(2)</sup> the internet	بسط
Arabic	اللغة العربية	it is the language of Arab countries <sup>(3)</sup>	غير/كل (2)
art	الرسم	we paint and draw in this lesson	الدول العربية (3)
computer studies	دراسات الحاسوب	we use a mouse in this lesson	الدرس (4)
English	اللغة الإنجليزية	it is the language <sup>(4)</sup> of England	الله (5)
French	اللغة الفرنسية	it is the language of France	
maths	الرياضيات	we learn about numbers in this lesson	

## Words and Synonyms

### الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
friendly	ودود	kind	طيب
true	صحيح	correct/right	صحيح

## Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	الوظيفة	الكلمة الجديدة	The new word
friend (n)	صديق	-ly	تحويل الاسم لمعنى	friendly (adj)	ودود

## Prefix

Prefix	الباء الدالة	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	friendly (adj)	ودود	غير ودود	unfriendly (adj)

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى
quite	إلى حد ما	quiet	هدئ	
Arabic	اللغة العربية	Arab	عربي (الجنسية)	

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-listening question:

- What is your favourite subject?

### 1 Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

Lesson 5

SB page 19



**Leila** There's the bell!

**Aya** What subject have we got next?

**Leila** Let's look at the timetable. We've got computer studies next, in the hall.

Hooray!

**Aya** Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies!

**Leila** I love it! It's my favourite! What's your favourite subject, Aya?

اللّغة (1)

اللّغة الفرنسية (2)

**Aya** I like science and languages<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Leila** Are you good at languages?

**Aya** I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Leila** Who's our English teacher this year?

**Aya** It's Mrs. Amal.

**Leila** Oh good. She's really friendly. When have we got English?

**Aya** It's after break.

**Leila** What time is break?

**Aya** It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground, and go to the library.

**Leila** OK!

### Post-listening questions:

1 How do you think Aya can improve her English?

2 How is Mrs. Amal?

**Pre-reading question:**

**Lesson 6**

- What do you do after school?

**Read about Amira. Write the questions a-c in the correct places.**

**SB page 20**

## **A Day in My Life!**

**Amira is from Egypt.**

**Q : 1. How old are you, and where are you from?**

**A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada.**

**Q : 2. What subjects do you like?**

**A : This year, I'm in preparatory 1 at school. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths.**

We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too, but I'm not very good at it!

**Q : 3. What do you usually do after school?**

**A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have dinner. After dinner, I usually have a shower and read my book in bed.**  
What time do you wake up and go to bed?



**Post-reading question:**

- How often does Amira have computer studies?

**Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.**

**WB page 84**

**Hi Nagwa,**

How are you? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. **My father works with computers.** My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. **My brother always plays football when we go there!** He is very good at football. What about you? **What do you do at the weekend?**

**Best wishes**

**Nesma**



# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding — Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

### ► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What is your ..... subject? B: It's English.

a) true      b) friend      c) favourite

٢٠٢٢ القاعدة

d) correct

2. ..... is the main language of Arab people.

a) French      b) Spanish      c) English

٢٠٢٢ كفر الشيم

d) Arabic

3. I like my teachers. They're very .....

a) bad      b) unkind      c) friendly

d) sad

4. I usually ..... a shower after school.

a) go      b) do      c) have

d) make

5. My mother ..... up early to make our breakfast.

a) puts      b) comes      c) forgets

٢٠٢٢ الشرقية

d) wakes

6. Which holiday ..... can people do in Egypt?

a) weeks      b) views      c) activities

d) souvenirs

7. I go to school. I'm in ..... one.

a) false      b) preparatory      c) right

d) kind

8. A/An ..... is a simple message sent through the internet.

a) email      b) art      c) letter

d) computer

9. Arabic, English and French are all .....

a) meals      b) languages      c) hobbies

٢٠٢٢ المغاربة

d) timetables

10. My mother always ..... shopping on Sundays.

a) arrives      b) gets      c) makes

d) goes

11. Breakfast, lunch and ..... are daily meals.

a) dinner      b) language      c) petrol

d) reading

12. My teacher asked us to ..... a project about computers.

a) do      b) make      c) have

d) come

13. When I ..... home from school, I have something to eat.

a) take      b) give      c) have

d) come



## C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق الطلاب  
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد



### Speaking

#### Ask and answer questions about school

##### Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

##### Response

جملة الرد



How do you travel to school?

I travel to school by bus.

كيف تساور إلى المدرسة؟

أسافر إلى المدرسة بالأتوبوس.

How long does it take?

About ten minutes.

كم تستغرق الرحلة؟

حوالي ١٠ دقائق.

Who is our teacher of English this year? من هو مدرسنا في اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟

Mr Waleed Ali.

الأستاذ وليد علي.

When have we got English?

It's after break.

من موعد حصه اللغة الإنجليزية؟

إليها بعد الفسحة.

What time is break?

It's at quarter past ten.

متى تكون الفسحة؟

في العاشرة والربع.

### Speaking Exercise

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

العنوان

#### Complete the following dialogue:

► Ahmed is asking Mustafa about his favourite subject.

Ahmed : Hi, Mustafa. Can I ask you a few questions about your school?

Mustafa: (1).....

Ahmed : What is your favourite subject?

Mustafa: (2).....

Ahmed : (3)..... ?

Mustafa: Because English is an interesting subject.

Ahmed : (4)..... ?

Mustafa: Mr. Omar is my English teacher this year.

Ahmed : How often do you study it?

Mustafa: (5).....

# TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 2 Lessons (5 & 6)

165

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is asking Amany about school.

الاسكندرية ٢٠١٩

Salma : Do you mind if I ask you some questions about school?

Amany : (1) .....

Salma : When do you usually wake up on school days?

Amany : (2) .....

Salma : (3) .....

Amany : I walk to school because it's very close to my house.

Salma : (4) .....

Amany : My favourite school subject is English.

Salma : Is there a library in your school?

Amany : (5) ..... I go there daily.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What ..... are you good at, Rana? B: English and Italian.

a) hobbies      b) sports      c) foods      d) languages

2. We always ..... dinner at nine in the evening.

a) have      b) do      c) take      d) give

3. My best friend lives ..... Giza.

a) on      b) in      c) from      d) of

4. We paint and draw in ..... lessons.

a) Arabic      b) science      c) maths      d) art

5. I like my friend Waleed because he is .....

a) ugly      b) bad      c) friendly      d) unfriendly

6. I get up at seven, then I ..... my clothes.

a) look at      b) put on      c) wake up      d) go to

7. Before I go to bed, I take my favourite book and ..... in bed.

a) read      b) come      c) go      d) have

8. My father asks me not to close the ..... door hard.  
a) cars'                    b) car's                    c) car is                    d) car

9. My father always ..... to work by bus.  
a) is going                b) going                    c) goes                      d) go

10. A: ..... dress is this? B: It's mine.  
a) Which                    b) Whose                    c) When                    d) What

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. A: How many do you study English? B: Every day. (.....)

2. What languages are you good for? (.....)

3. My brother's birthday is on Monday. They are twins. (.....)

4. Aya never walk to school. (.....)

**Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

نماهیة الكتاب

**"A typical day in your life"**

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

محب عنده فلس نهاية الكتاب

1 My brother always plays football ..... we go to the park.  
a) when                    b) why                    c) which                    d) what

2 I don't like science, but I'm ..... good at it.  
a) quite                    b) not                    c) never                    d) hardly

3 Students ..... many activities to do at school.  
a) stay                    b) make                    c) do                      d) have

# Review

on Unit 3

## Skills

### Language

### Vocabulary

maths	الرياضيات	1 Adverbs of frequency: always / usually / often / sometimes / never	ظروف التكرار: طريق التكرار: / ابعد / أحدث / أبداً / ف撒دة / راحة	Always / usually / often / sometimes / never	Always / usually / often / sometimes / never	Always / usually / often / sometimes / never
motorbike	دراجة بخارية					
break	فترة/راحة					
notebook	كتابه/دفتر					
canoe	زورق طوبل خفيف / الكتو					
computer studies	دراسات الكمبيوتر	• Subject + <b>adv.</b>	أدب الريانات / هادئ المفاهيم / نعم طريق التكرار قبل الفعل الآنساء كالاتصال.	B: I like maths./ B: My favourite subject is social studies.	A: What's your favourite subject?	A: What's your favourite subject?
daily life	الحياة اليومية	• Subject + <b>am/is/are</b> + <b>verb</b>	يتم استخدام طريق التكرار بعد مع كل فعل	B: I have seven lessons every day.	A: How many lessons do you have every day?	A: How many lessons do you have every day?
playground	ملعب	• Subject + <b>am/is/are</b> + <b>adv.</b> (الـ) + adj. (الـ)	ذلك الذي / كل يوم	A: I have seven lessons every day.	B: I have seven lessons every day.	B: I have seven lessons every day.
drama	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)	2 (s):	العاشرة (s / s':)	A: What time is break?	A: What time is break?	A: What time is break?
religion	الدين			B: It's at eleven o'clock.	B: It's at eleven o'clock.	B: It's at eleven o'clock.
English	اللغة الإنجليزية			A: Who is our teacher of English this year?	A: Who is our teacher of English this year?	A: Who is our teacher of English this year?
rules	قواعد	• It's Adel's book.	هي العاشرة عشرين (s)	B: Mr Mohamed Mesbah.	B: Mr Mohamed Mesbah.	B: Mr Mohamed Mesbah.
favourite subject	مادة مفضلة	• That is not the children's notebook.		A: How do you travel to school?	A: How do you travel to school?	A: How do you travel to school?
French	اللغة الفرنسية	3 (s):		B: I travel to school by bus.	B: I travel to school by bus.	B: I travel to school by bus.
snowmobile	عربة الثلج	• That's the teachers' room.	(Who's) (Whose) (Whom)	A: Whose shoes are these?	A: Whose shoes are these?	A: Whose shoes are these?
social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية	• It's Lamees' dress.	عند السؤال عن العاشرة نستخدم ملك من /هل	B: They are Ali's shoes.	B: They are Ali's shoes.	B: They are Ali's shoes.
timetable	جدول الحصص	• I repaired my car door.				
Home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلي					
typical	نموذجي/متسلل					
languages	لغات					
uniform	زي موحد					
Whose ...?	لمن/ملك من ... ?					

It's my favourite subject 91



# Al-Adwaa Test

on Unit

2

24

**A**

## Listening

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How is the weather in the USA in winter? نـصـ الـاسـتـمـاعـ فـيـ نـهاـيـةـ الـكتـاب  
 a) Rainy.      b) Sunny.      c) Windy.      d) Snowy.

2. How do the children go to school there?  
 a) By bus.      b) By car.  
 c) In a canoe.      d) On a snowmobile.

3. How is their journey to school?  
 a) Fast.      b) Fun.  
 c) Both a & b.      d) Neither a nor b.

4. How is the weather when they go to school?  
 a) Hot.      b) Cold.      c) Wet.      d) Cool.

**B**

## Language Functions

**2** Complete the following dialogue:

Dina is asking Jana about her typical day.

الـماـهـرـةـ

Dina : When do you get up?

Jana : (1).....

Dina : (2).....?

Jana : I have breakfast at six thirty.

Dina : (3).....?

Jana : I go to school at eight o'clock.

Dina : What time do you come home from school?

Jana : (4).....

Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch?

Jana : (5).....

## C Reading Comprehension

الفاتحة ٢٠٢٢

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mustafa. I'm in preparatory one at Tanta Prep School. When I was at primary school, I walked there every day as it was not far from my house. It took me only 10 minutes to get there. This year, my school is far from my house. I get up early every day and take a bus. The streets are very busy, so it takes me a long time to go and **come back**. My dad is friendly, he bought me a bike. It is wonderful. I sometimes cycle to school. Bikes are a healthy way to travel.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....  
2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

.....  
3. Why do you think Mustafa cycles to school?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mustafa is at Tanta Prep School for ..... year(s).

a) one      b) two      c) three      d) four

5. The opposite of "come back" is .....

a) go      b) take out      c) come to      d) get up

6. Mustafa goes to his school by .....

a) taxi      b) car      c) train      d) bus

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Girls learn how to cook in the .....

a) Arabic      b) science  
c) maths      d) home economics

2. My journey to school ..... about 30 minutes.

a) talks      b) wakes      c) takes      d) makes

3. A: What time is it? B: It's half ..... twelve.

a) on      b) in      c) to      d) past

4. The ..... rings at the beginning and the end of the lessons.

a) ball      b) pin      c) bin      d) bell

٢٠٢٢ - الفاتحة

٢٠٢٢ - الفاتحة

5. I usually eat cheese and eggs ..... breakfast.  
a) with                  b) to                  c) by                  d) for

6. Swimming is my ..... hobby. I like it.  
a) expensive            b) favourite            c) bad                  d) radio

7. I like English and French. I'm good at ..... .  
a) sports                b) languages            c) objects              d) subjects

8. We ..... go to school on Fridays. It's a holiday.  
a) often                b) sometimes            c) always                d) never

9. Sandy is one of ..... friends.  
a) Leila's              b) Leilas'              c) Leilas                d) Leila

10. My brother ..... a clever tennis player.  
a) always               b) is always            c) always is            d) never

### **5** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The mall usually is crowded at the weekend. (.....) correct answer  
2. How often are you travel by plane? (.....)  
3. That beautiful blouse is my mothers. (.....)  
4. Nour grows always plants in their garden. (.....)

## **E** Writing

 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

## **"School rules"**



## Assess your progress



Study guide

第2章

640

P = 100%

# Monthly Models on Units 1&2

هذه النماذج ستساعدك التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

## October Model 1

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

10

Samir is asking Yehia about his favourite sport.

Samir: Good morning.

Yehia : Good morning. Can I ask you some more questions?

Samir: (1).....

Yehia : Do you have any hobbies?

Samir: (2).....

Yehia : (3).....?

Samir: My favourite sport is football.

Yehia : (4).....?

Samir: I play it on Fridays.

Yehia : (5).....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your sister is your parents' ..... .

a) son      b) uncle      c) aunt      d) daughter

2. My uncle travels a lot. He has a lot of .....

a) notebooks      b) objects      c) adventures      d) subjects

3. Athletes work hard to ..... their studies, work and their families.

a) practice      b) balance      c) arrive      d) volunteer

4. We arrived at Luxor Airport at quarter ..... six.

a) past      b) paste      c) post      d) pasta

5. I can hear the ..... . It's time for the English lesson.

a) bell      b) bill      c) hall      d) ball

6. Children in Uganda cross the lake in a .....  
 a) bus      b) taxi      c) canoe      d) snowmobile

7. I usually ..... my homework after school.  
 a) have      b) make      c) take      d) do

8. What time does school ..... every day?  
 a) starting      b) start      c) starts      d) started

9. Tell ..... about your family.  
 a) mine      b) my      c) me      d) I

10. It's ..... pencil case.  
 a) Ali      b) Ali's      c) Alis      d) Alis'

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I usually plays basketball on Sundays. (.....)

2. She don't like playing tennis. (.....)

3. He helps always his father with his work. (.....)

4. A: Who's pencil is yours? B: The red one. (.....)

5. A: How many do you walk to school? B: Always. (.....)

**Part 2 Final Revision**



قم بمراجعة  
أهم المفردات  
والقواعد اللغوية  
والمهارات وحل  
المزيد من الأسئلة  
الخاصة بالوحدتين  
الأولى والثانية عن  
طريق الذهاب لدرء  
المراجعة الشهرية  
بملحق التقويم.

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .... is a game for two people.  
 a) Football      b) Handball      c) Chess      d) Volleyball
2. Basmala works hard to ..... her dreams.  
 a) sleep      b) achieve      c) have      d) take
3. When her parents died in an accident, she became a/an ..... .  
 a) orphan      b) kind      c) age      d) baby
4. As a gymnast, Ola ..... for 5 or 6 hours daily to be fit.  
 a) teaches      b) trains      c) studies      d) swims
5. I learnt how to cook in the ..... lessons.  
 a) computer studies    b) social studies    c) home economics    d) maths
6. I always borrow books from the school ..... .  
 a) lab      b) library      c) bookshop      d) hall
7. People in Egypt are very ..... . Many tourists like them.  
 a) friendly      b) unfriendly      c) scary      d) boring
8. Girls always ..... to pop music.  
 a) listening      b) are listening      c) listens      d) listen
9. ..... Nabil's sister play handball?  
 a) Does      b) Do      c) Is      d) Are
10. Fouad is one of ..... friends.  
 a) Samy's      b) Samys'      c) Samys      d) Samy

**2 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. That pen is me and this is yours.  
 (.....)
2. Where's the teachers room, please?  
 (.....)
3. Who pencil case is this?  
 (.....)
4. That's my father car.  
 (.....)
5. Soliman always walks to school. It's too far.  
 (.....)

## October Model 3

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Hazem are talking about the school day.

Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem?

Hazem : (1).....

Hatem : (2)..... ?

Hazem : Mr Samir is our English teacher this year.

Hatem : He's a good teacher. (3)..... ?

Hazem : We have English today after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths?

Hazem : (4)..... I like maths.

Hatem : What time is the break?

Hazem : (5).....

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

"Heidi" is the story of an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the city.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage mainly about?

2. What do you think of Heidi's life?

3. Where does Heidi sleep?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That car belongs to my uncle. It's him. (.....)

2. We often goes shopping at the weekend. (.....)

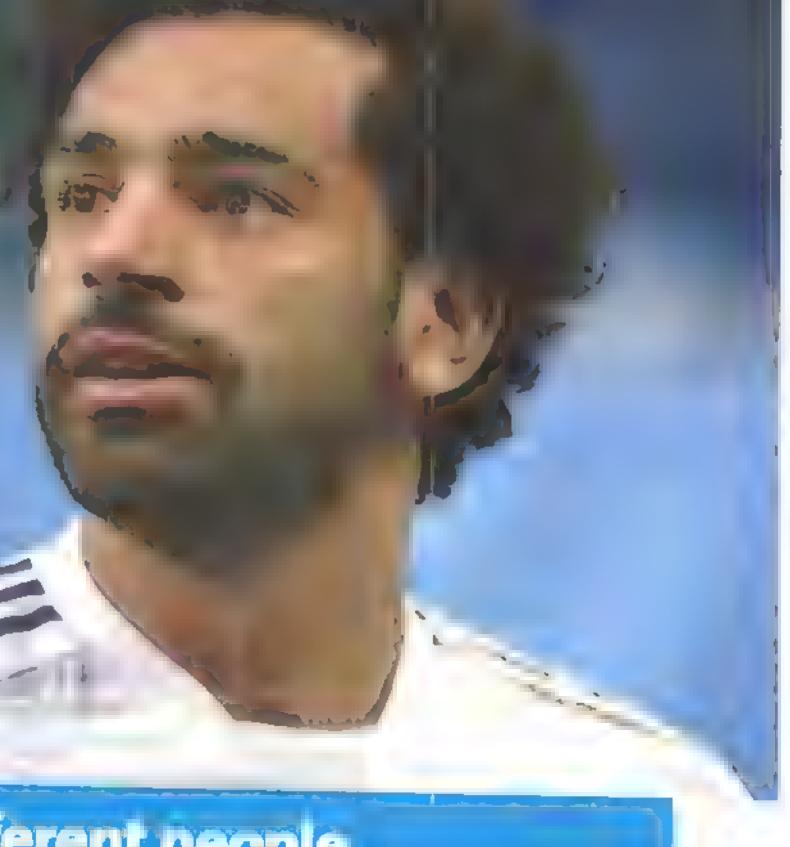
3. He always swims. He can't swim. (.....)

4. This is me phone. It's new. (.....)



**Write a paragraph of about Eighty (80) words on:**

**"A day in your school!"**



## Unit 3

# Different people

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

Tapescripts



**Writing** A blog post about a friend

**Listening** Descriptions of people

**Speaking** Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes

**Language** have / has got, can / can't

**Life Skills** Respect for diversity; resilience



SB pages 22-25 | WB pages 86 &amp; 87

● قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضوع أسلمة امتحانية.

● قم باختصار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحلق القويم وتسميم الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين

**A Vocabulary****Key Vocabulary**

famous (adj)

مشهور | look (ed) like

يشبه

footballer (n)

لاعب كرة قدم | moustache (n)

شارب

beard (n)

لحية | goal (n)

هدف

big smile

ابتسامة كبيرة | runner (n)

عداء/متسابق جري

Europe (n)

أوروبا | sports star (n)

نجم رياضي

fan (n)

معجب/مشجع | team (n)

فريق

**Hair types**

curly hair

شعر مجعد | straight hair

شعر مستقيم

dark hair

شعر داكن | blond hair

شعر أشقر

short hair

شعر قصير | long hair

شعر طويل

**Sports**

basketball (n)

كرة السلة | squash (n)

الإسكواش

running (n)

الجري | volleyball (n)

الكرة الطائرة

**المفردات الرئيسية****Additional Vocabulary**

carry (y/ied) (v)

يحمل | normal (adj)

عادى/طبيعي

description (n)

وصف | person (n)

شخص

insect (n)

حشرة | present (n)

هدية

Italian (n/adj)

اللغة الإيطالية/إيطالي | the Cairo Tower (n)

برج القاهرة

glasses (n)

نظارة/نظارات | tortoise (n)

سلحفاة

**المفردات الإضافية****Choose and complete:** tiger tortoise footballer like

1 Mohamed Salah is an amazing ..... .

يمدح هذا التدريب

2 What does your best friend look ..... ?

لقياس فهمك

3 The ..... is a very slow animal.

المفردات الرئيسية

والإضافية.



(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective

(prep) = preposition |

لاحظ الاختصار الآتي:

(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb

(conj) = conjunction |

## Language Expressions

jump > high	يقفز عاليًا	score > a goal	يحرر/يسجل هدفًا
play > video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	take > a holiday	يأخذ إجازة
talk to > fans	يتكلم مع المعجبين	give > money	يعطى (يتبرع) بالمال

## التعابير اللغوية

Prepositions	حروف الجر
easy for	سهل لـ
have time for	لديه وقت لـ
go at + السرعة	تسير بسرعة
pick (ed) up	يلتقط
	play for
	short for a footballer
	talk to
	travel around

بعد هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
لتعابير اللغة  
وحروف الجر.

Choose and complete: for around score

1 Mohamed Salah can ..... a lot of goals.

2 Cristiano Ronaldo plays ..... Al Nasr Football Club in the KSA.

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
build	بني	built	built	give	يعطى
fly	يطير	flew	flown	win	يفوز/يكسب

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

### Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	معكوسها
fast	سرير	slow	بطيء
poor	فقر	rich	غني
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
tall	طويل	short	قصير

## Language Notes

درس الملاحظات اللغوية حيث أنها موضع اسئلة امتحانية.

### 1 tall

• My brother is tall.

### long

• She's got long hair.

(طويل) (طول رأسها)

(طويل) (طول أقصافها)

## 2 How to describe someone's hair:

كيفية وصف شعر شخص ما:



size



colour



pattern



noun

long

dark

curly

short

black

straight

hair

- Mohamed Salah has got long, dark, curly hair.

## 3 What + do/does + look like?

للسؤال عن الملامح نستخدم

- What does your father look like?

- He's got short, dark hair.

## Vocabulary Builder

جرء اثرالي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



### Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف، جيداً
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
football (n)	كرة قدم	-er		تحويل الاسم الى اسم فاعل		footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم

### Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		funny (adj)	مضحك	unfunny (adj)	غير مضحك

### Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا الجدول يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.
hair	شعر	hear	يسم	
fans	مغبيون	fins	زعانف السمكة	
beard	لحية	bread	خبز	



## B Reading & Listening Skills

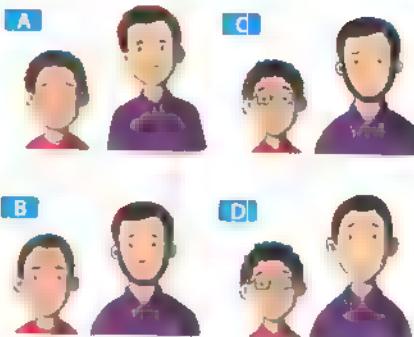
### Pre-listening question:

- What does your father look like?

Lesson 1

Listen. Tick (✓) the picture of Samir.

SB page 23



Mazin There's my friend, Samir.

Mum I don't know Samir. What does he look like<sup>(1)</sup>?

يُبَلَّغُ (1)

شَعْرٌ مُكَثُرٌ فَطَرَ (2)

Mazin He's got short, dark hair<sup>(2)</sup>.

مُكَثُرٌ (3)

لَحْيَةٌ (4)

Mum Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses<sup>(3)</sup>?

Mazin No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

Mum Has Samir's dad got a beard<sup>(4)</sup>?

Mazin Yes, he has.

Mum Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.



Note:

تعلم كيفية بطاقة الكلمة التالية:

beard /bɪərd/

### Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Mazin's mother has met Samir before? How do you know?

Complete the descriptions with these words:

WB page 86



The woman in the first picture has got long straight hair and glasses. The man in the second picture has got short curly dark hair and a moustache. The second woman has got short blonde hair. The second man has got short dark hair and a beard.

## Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Mohamed Salah?

Look at the photo. What do you know about this sports star?

SB page 24

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star<sup>(1)</sup>. He plays football for a very good team<sup>(2)</sup> in Europe<sup>(3)</sup>. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner<sup>(4)</sup>.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile<sup>(5)</sup>. He is quite short<sup>(6)</sup> for a footballer<sup>(7)</sup>. He is 1.75 metres tall<sup>(8)</sup>. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind<sup>(9)</sup> person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor<sup>(10)</sup> people. He is very friendly<sup>(11)</sup> and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Europe /'juərəp/  
score /skɔ:/

لجم رياضي (1)	فريق (2)	أوروبا (3)
عاء سرير (4)	ايسامة كبيرة (5)	قطب (6)
لاعب كرة قدم (7)	طويل (8)	عطف (9)
مقرر (10)	هدوج (11)	

## Post-reading questions:

- 1 Mohamed Salah is a kind person. Explain.
- 2 Do you think Mohamed Salah is a role model? Why?

### Pre-listening question:

- Which sport would you like to practise?

 Listen and circle the correct words. **SB page 25**

My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.



Complete the sentences with can or can't.

**WB page 87**



Mohamed Salah **can** score lots of goals and he **can** run very fast. He lives in England. He **can** speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he **can** speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he **can't** have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He **can't** take many holidays.



**Note:**

England /ɪŋglənd/      famous /feɪməs/      Italian /ɪtæliən/      علم كلية بطق الكلمات الثالثة

### Post-reading question:

- How many languages can Mohamed Salah speak?

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ■ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Has your sister got short hair? B: No, she has got ..... hair.  
a) long      b) slow      c) fast      d) kind

2. Her hair is ..... It is not straight.  
a) blond      b) short      c) curly      d) long

3. I have got short, dark, curly .....  
a) hear      b) hair      c) ear      d) her

4. I can't see well, so I need .....  
a) classes      b) glasses      c) shoes      d) books

5. Mohamed Salah has a big .....  
a) smell      b) smile      c) mile      d) small

6. My sister likes writing stories. She wants to be a famous .....  
a) writer      b) gymnast      c) nurse      d) singer

7. Mohammed Salah is quite short ..... a footballer.  
a) on      b) to      c) at      d) for

8. He's Maher's brother. He looks ..... him.  
a) like      b) by      c) with      d) near

9. She has got ..... hair. It's very long.  
a) street      b) straight      c) funny      d) hard

10. Mohamed Salah is very ..... He always talks to his fans.  
a) funny      b) rich      c) friendly      d) poor

11. My cousin lives in Italy, but he can't ..... Italian well.  
a) speak      b) talk      c) tell      d) watch

12. I had many ..... on my birthday.  
a) presents      b) films      c) holidays      d) features

13. Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian ..... star. He is very famous.  
a) sport      b) sporty      c) sports      d) sport's

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salah can ..... a lot of goals.  
 a) break      b) save      c) find      d) score
2. My grandfather has got a big ..... on his mouth.  
 a) hair      b) beard      c) ear      d) moustache
3. My hair is ..... It isn't straight.  
 a) blond      b) curly      c) short      d) long
4. Mohammed Salah is friendly and always talks to his .....  
 a) pans      b) pins      c) vans      d) fans
5. A ..... is a group of people who play a sport together.  
 a) star      b) goal      c) footballer      d) team
6. One of my hobbies is ..... video games.  
 a) playing      b) scoring      c) giving      d) writing
7. Sara always reads ..... stories. They make her laugh.  
 a) sad      b) unkind      c) funny      d) bad
8. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports ..... around the world.  
 a) moon      b) sky      c) high      d) star
9. Speaking many languages isn't easy ..... most people.  
 a) with      b) in      c) at      d) for
10. He was the first. He is really a fast .....  
 a) worker      b) teacher      c) runner      d) writer
11. He has got dark hair and a .....  
 a) beard      b) heard      c) bird      d) tired
12. My grandfather is kind. He helps ..... people.  
 a) famous      b) strong      c) rich      d) poor
13. My father doesn't have much time ..... playing a sport.  
 a) at      b) for      c) on      d) to

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بادئه ال Quiz ، الخاص بكل درس من ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك



# Language

## Have/Has got

I You We They (اسم جمجم)

➤ have(n't) got .....

- I have got short, curly hair.
- They haven't got curly hair.

He She It (اسم مفرد)

➤ has(n't) got .....

- Mazin has got a bike.
- My mother hasn't got a car.

**Form**  
التكوين

يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد (have/has) :

- Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile.

### Yes/No questions

Have	I you we they (اسم جمجم)	➤ got ...?
------	--------------------------------------	------------

A: Have you got curly hair?  
B: Yes, I have. / B: No, I haven't.

**Question**  
السؤال

Has	he she it (اسم مفرد)	➤ got ...?
-----	-------------------------------	------------

A: Has Mazin got a bike?  
B: Yes, he has. / B: No, he hasn't.

### Wh-questions

Question word (اداة الاستفهام) + has/have + subj. (الفاعل) + got ...?

A: How many brothers have you got?

B: I have got three brothers.



Read and correct the underlined words:

1) She's get blond hair.

(.....)

ن يمكنك هذه المجموعة من التعرف على كيفية اجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (got) لوجود 's وحسب اختصار has

2) A: Have you got glasses? B: No, I have.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة No (haven't) لوجود الدالة على النفي.

## Form &amp; Usage:

التكوين والاستخدام:

## Subject + can + inf.      يستطيع

We use **can** to say what we are able to do:نستخدم **(can + inf.)** للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء.

- We **can** give money to help poor people.
- I **can** read English books.

## Subject + can't + inf.      لا يستطيع

We use **cannot/can't** to say what we are not able to do:نستخدم **(can't + inf.)** للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء.

- I **can't** pick up that box. My arms are weak.
- I **can't** swim well.

## Question

## Can + subject + inf. ...?

A: **Can** you play the drums?B: Yes, I **can**.A: **Can** Eman play chess?B: No, she **can't**.

## Subject + can + inf.

= Subject + am/is/are + able to + Inf.

• Sara **can** ride a bike.= Sara **is** able to ride a bike.• **Can** I have a cup of coffee, please?نستخدم **can** للطلب أو الاستئذان.

تمكّنك هذه الجريمة من التعرّف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ معدّمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

## Read and correct the underlined words:

1) Omar can't flew a kite.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**fly**) لأن **can't** ياتي بعدهما الفعل في المصدر.2) He can drive his father's car?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Can he**) لأنه توجّد علامة استفهام فيجب تقديم **Can** على الفاعل.

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. My brother has ..... a laptop.

a) get      b) got      c) gets      d) getting

2. A: Have you got long hair? B: No, I ..... got short hair.

a) have      b) haven't      c) has      d) hasn't

3. We ..... got a big house. Our house is small.

a) hasn't      b) haven't      c) aren't      d) weren't

4. Mohamed Salah has ..... dark, curly hair.

a) gets      b) get      c) got      d) getting

5. I ..... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses.

a) have      b) hasn't      c) haven't      d) has

6. My father has ..... a smartphone.

a) get      b) got      c) gets      d) getting

7. All my brothers and sisters ..... dark, curly hair.

a) has got      b) have got      c) are got      d) is got

8. .... Faten's dad got a red car?

a) Has      b) Have      c) Do      d) Does

9. I ..... got brown hair.

a) don't have      b) hasn't      c) doesn't have      d) haven't

10. .... got straight hair?

a) Have you      b) You have      c) You are      d) Are you

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. Has you got a mobile phone?

( ... . . . )

2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair.

( ... . . . )

3. Your father has get a good job.

( ... . . . )

4. Have you got a brother? Yes, I haven't.

( ... . . . )

5. My best friend have got short, dark hair.

( ... . . . )

6. We is got an apple tree in our garden.

( ... . . . )

7. I'm busy, I can come with you right now.

( ... . . . )

## Time to Practise



**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1. What sports ..... you play well?  
 a) can      b) are      c) have      d) has
- 2. My dad only speaks English. He ..... speak French.  
 a) can      b) can't      c) have      d) haven't
- 3. ..... I use your pen, please?  
 a) Can      b) Has      c) Have      d) Are
- 4. They ..... live here, the weather is too cold.  
 a) can't      b) aren't      c) haven't      d) hasn't
- 5. I'm sorry, I ..... help you today, I'm really busy.  
 a) can      b) can't      c) have      d) haven't
- 6. The girls can ..... squash.  
 a) play      b) plays      c) played      d) playing
- 7. I can ride a bike, but I ..... drive a car.  
 a) am not      b) am      c) can      d) can't
- 8. Look! Ali is there! ..... see him?  
 a) You have      b) Have you      c) Can you      d) You can
- 9. I'm sure you ..... do your homework alone. It's very easy!  
 a) are      b) aren't      c) can't      d) can
- 10. I ..... speak French, but I know how to write it.  
 a) can      b) can't      c) have      d) haven't

**2 Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1. Can your sister singing well? (.....)
- 2. He can't picked up that box. (.....)
- 3. A: Can she fly a kite? B: Yes, she can't. (.....)
- 4. He can plays football very well. (.....)
- 5. I'm a good footballer. I can't play well. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإدخاله إلى Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق الطالب  
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### How to write about your favourite sports star.

كيفية الكتابة عن نجمك الرياضي المفضل.

- I like sports.
- My favourite sports star is (الاسم).
- He/She plays (الرياضة).
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (tall/short).
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (fast/strong).
- He/She has got (very/quite) (short/long/straight/curlly) hair.
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (kind/friendly).
- He/She always talks to his/her fans.

#### Writing tips

Note that.

لاحظ الاختصارات التالية

has = 's

is = 's

have = 've

#### Example

##### A sports star

I like sports. There are many sports stars all over the world. My favourite sports star is Mohamed Salah. I like him very much. He is a good footballer. He works hard to achieve his goals. He is 1.75 metres tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He helps many poor people. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. So, all of us should be proud of him.

Check point

#### Write a paragraph about:

"Mohamed Salah"

I like sports.

**TEST YOURSELF****Unit 3**Lessons  
(12-21)

17

SB

نيل الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Who is Basel?
 

<b>a)</b> His brother.	<b>b)</b> His father.
<b>c)</b> His uncle.	<b>d)</b> His friend.
2. What is his favourite subject?
 

<b>a)</b> Arabic.	<b>b)</b> Maths.
<b>c)</b> English.	<b>d)</b> Science.
3. What does he like?
 

<b>a)</b> Reading.	<b>b)</b> Video games.
<b>c)</b> Writing.	<b>d)</b> Both A and B.
4. What kind of hair has he got?
 

<b>a)</b> Curly.	<b>b)</b> Straight.	<b>c)</b> Blond.	<b>d)</b> Dark.
------------------	---------------------	------------------	-----------------

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. She has long ..... hair. It's very beautiful.
 

<b>a)</b> around	<b>b)</b> straight	<b>c)</b> funny	<b>d)</b> poor
------------------	--------------------	-----------------	----------------
2. My uncle is very funny. He has a big ..... on his face.
 

<b>a)</b> smile	<b>b)</b> ear	<b>c)</b> eye	<b>d)</b> insect
-----------------	---------------	---------------	------------------
3. How ..... is the Cairo Tower? It is 187 metres.
 

<b>a)</b> tall	<b>b)</b> long	<b>c)</b> wide	<b>d)</b> much
----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------
4. Mohamed Salah, Cristiano Ronaldo and Haaland are famous .....
 

<b>a)</b> dentists	<b>b)</b> footballers
<b>c)</b> teachers	<b>d)</b> accountants
5. In football matches, there are two .....
 

<b>a)</b> teams	<b>b)</b> times
<b>c)</b> players	<b>d)</b> matches
6. Our car can go ..... 150 km/h.
 

<b>a)</b> for	<b>b)</b> at	<b>c)</b> by	<b>d)</b> with
---------------	--------------	--------------	----------------
7. Adel Emam is a famous film ..... in Egypt.
 

<b>a)</b> star	<b>b)</b> moon	<b>c)</b> land	<b>d)</b> runner
----------------	----------------	----------------	------------------

WB

8. Eman ..... lots of friends.

a) have got      b) haven't      c) has got      d) hasn't

9. This is too difficult! I ..... do it.

a) can                  b) can't                  c) have                  d) haven't

**10.** We ~~have~~ a lot of homework to do.

a) are      b) can      c) has got      d) have got

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have you got any brothers? (.....)

2. What is your sister look like? (.....)

3. A: Can your uncle speak Chinese? B: Yes, he can't. (.....)

4. I can pick up that box. My arms are weak. (.....)

**4** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"Your favourite sports star"**



### **Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

محبٌّ عَلَيْهِ فِي نِهايَةِ الْكِتَابِ

1) Can you give me a \_\_\_\_\_ of your house?

a) feature      b) room      c) description      d) present

**2** Adel ..... to climb that tree.

a) can      b) can't      c) able      d) is able

**3** A: Have you got long hair? B: No. I ..... got short hair.

a) have      b) haven't      c) has      d) hasn't



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	online diary	المفردات الرئيسية
blog post (n)	منشور في مدونة	scary (adj)	مخيف
busy (adj)	مشغول	sensible (adj)	عقل/حكيم
character (n)	شخصية	strange (adj)	غربي
heart (n)	قلب	Wonderland (n)	بلاد العجائب
history (n)	التاريخ	website (n)	موقع إنترنت

### Additional Vocabulary

children's story (n)	قصة أطفال	main (adj)	المفردات الإضافية
clear (adj)	واضح	queen (n)	ملكة
information (n)	معلومات/معلومات	simple (adj)	بسيط



Choose and complete: scary busy - queen simple

- 1 A ..... is the wife زوجة of the king.
- 2 I can't play with you. I'm very .....
- 3 The lion is a ..... animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لتعزيز فهمك  
المفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

### Language Expressions

do > art/math	يدرس الرسم/الرياضيات	get > angry	يفض
go > home	يذهب إلى البيت	make > decisions	يتخذ قرارات

## حروف الجر

### Prepositions

at the end of	في نهاية	shout at	يصرخ في
frightened of	حائط من	write on a website	يكتب في موقع إنترنت
learn about	يتعلم عن	play with	يلعب مع / بـ



### Choose and complete:

make - of - at - do

- 1 I like drawing. I ..... art after school.
- 2 Children are usually frightened ..... dark places.
- 3 Don't shout ..... your little brother.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتغييرات اللغوية  
وحوروف الجر

### Conjugations of irregular verbs

تصريف الاموال عبر المسطحة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.	
begin	يبدأ	began	begun	يسباح/يعوم	swam	swum
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	يعتقد	thought	thought

### Words and Opposites

الكلمات و عكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
angry	غاضب	calm	هدئ
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
clever	ظاهر/ذكي	stupid	غبي
hungry	جوعان	full	ممتلئ
interesting	شيق	boring	الممل
late	منتأخر	early	مبكر

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع لستة امتحانية.



### 1 like + (v+ing/n) يحب

- I like swimming.

### love (v+ing/n) يحب (بشدة)

- I love learning about the past.

### 2 Adjectives ending with (ed/ing):

#### الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed/ing)

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف الكائن الذي يشعر بهذه الصفة.

- He doesn't know what to do. He is **bored**.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الكائن الحي أو الشيء الذي يسبب هذه الصفة.

- The film was very **boring**. So, I didn't enjoy it.

### 3 Study these adjectives:

ادرس هذه الصفات

- A **clever** person knows a lot.
- A **sensible** person advises people and makes good decisions.
- A **brave** person is happy to do something dangerous.
- Something **scary** makes you feel frightened.
- A **busy** person is always doing something.
- People often feel **angry** when they are unhappy about something.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إلزامي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



### Definitions

### التعريفات

blog	مدونة	A website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary.	باتظام
------	-------	--	--------

### Words and Synonyms

### الكلمات ومرادفتها

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفتها
angry				غاضب	cross	غاضب
clever				ماهر/ذكي	brilliant	متالق/ذكي

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يُخيف	-ed		تحويل الفعل لصيغة		frightened (adj)	خائف
sense (n)	حسنة	-ible		تحويل الاسم لصيغة		sensible (adj)	عقل/حكيم



## 8 Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-reading question:

- What would you like to tell us about yourself?

Lesson 8

**Read the blog post quickly. What is Yunis's favourite sport? SB page 26**

### All about me



Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark, curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about the past<sup>(2)</sup>. I like maths and science, too. I do not like art because I am not very good at drawing<sup>(3)</sup> or painting<sup>(4)</sup>.

I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming twice<sup>(5)</sup> a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring<sup>(6)</sup>.

الماضي (2) منشور على مدونة الكترونية (1)

الرسم (3) التلوين (4)

مررتون (5) فعل (6)



### Post-reading questions:

- 1) What do you think of watching TV?
- 2) Why doesn't Yunis like art?

### Pre-listening question:

- What kind of sports do you like?

Listen to the game and write the order.

SB page 27

Girl 1 Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it?

Girl 2 Does she like watching TV?

Girl 1 No, she doesn't.

Dina

Girl 2 Does she like swimming<sup>(1)</sup>?

swim



Girl 1 Yes, she does.

paint



Girl 2 It's Noha.

play/basketball



Girl 1 Good! OK. Number two. Who is it?

Girl 2 Does she like swimming?

Noha

Girl 1 Yes, she does. She loves swimming!

swim



Girl 2 Does she like playing basketball?

watch/TV



Girl 1 No, she doesn't.

paint



Girl 2 It's Dina.

Eman

Girl 1 Well done! Three. Who is this?

watch/TV



Girl 2 Does she like painting?

paint



Girl 1 Yes, she does.

play/basketball



Girl 2 It's Eman.

Maya

Girl 1 No, it isn't.

watch/TV



Girl 2 Does she like basketball?

paint



Girl 1 Yes, she does.

play/basketball



Girl 2 It's Maya.

Girl 1 Yes!

اللّوّح / الرسم (1)

اللّوّح / الرسم (2)

Girl 2 OK, so the last one loves painting<sup>(2)</sup>,

she likes watching TV and she doesn't

like playing basketball. It's Eman.

Girl 1 Yes again!

### Post-listening question:

- Did you like the game? Why/ Why not?

### Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite subject?

**Read the blogs and write the questions a–c in the correct place.**

**WB page 88**

- a. Which sport do you like?
- b. What do you do in the evening?
- c. What is your favourite subject?

#### c. What is your favourite subject?

1 My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.



#### a. Which sport do you like?

2 I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

#### b. What do you do in the evening?

3 I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

### Post-reading questions:

1 Why do you think Riham isn't good at tennis?

2 What subjects is Riham good at?

## Pre-reading question:

- Who is your favourite writer?

Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about? Is it a true story?

SB page 28

## Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

by Lewis Carroll

*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*<sup>(1)</sup> is a famous children's story. Alice's adventure<sup>(2)</sup> begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a strange<sup>(3)</sup> place. She is a sensible<sup>(4)</sup> girl, but she does not understand Wonderland.

Alice is also brave<sup>(5)</sup> and clever<sup>(6)</sup>. She meets a lot of interesting characters<sup>(7)</sup>.

Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy<sup>(8)</sup> – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.

The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary<sup>(9)</sup> person. She is always angry<sup>(10)</sup> and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened<sup>(11)</sup> of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.



### Post-reading questions:

1 Alice is a brave girl. Explain.

(1) بلاد العجائب (2) مفاجأة (3) غريب

(4) عمل (5) شجاع (6) صابر

2 What have you learnt from the story?

(7) شخصيات (8) مشغول (9) مذعوف

(10) عازب (11) خائف

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like ..... because I am very good at drawing.  
a) art      b) history      c) science      d) maths
2. I often ..... swimming on Fridays.  
a) make      b) catch      c) go      d) do
3. I do not like this programme. I think it is .....  
a) boring      b) cool      c) interesting      d) good
4. A busy person is always .....  
a) talking      b) walking  
c) laughing      d) doing something
5. Something scary makes you feel .....  
a) frightened      b) happy      c) funny      d) free
6. Tamer is writing about his weekend in his online .....  
a) printer      b) diary      c) mouse      d) laptop
7. A ..... person knows a lot.  
a) brave      b) busy      c) clever      d) sad
8. A blog is a/an ..... on which someone writes regularly.  
a) website      b) playground      c) office      d) library
9. People often feel ..... when they are unhappy about something.  
a) weak      b) strong      c) hungry      d) angry
10. A sensible person ..... good decisions.  
a) goes      b) watches      c) makes      d) does
11. I like history, so I love learning about the .....  
a) present      b) past      c) now      d) tomorrow
12. Alice is the main ..... in the story I read.  
a) diary      b) blog      c) post      d) character
13. She is a wise girl. This means she is .....  
a) naughty      b) sensible      c) bad      d) lazy

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A brave person is happy to do something ..... .
 

a) fun	b) strange	c) bad	d) dangerous
--------	------------	--------	--------------
2. My father is ..... . He thinks well.
 

a) sensible	b) nervous	c) bored	d) strange
-------------	------------	----------	------------
3. She is a ..... person, she shouts at people.
 

a) friendly	b) sensible	c) brave	d) scary
-------------	-------------	----------	----------
4. A blog is a/an ..... diary.
 

a) online	b) offline	c) inline	d) line
-----------	------------	-----------	---------
5. Ahmed likes ..... because he loves learning about the past.
 

a) painting	b) post	c) post	d) history
-------------	---------	---------	------------
6. He didn't do his homework, so the teacher is very ..... .
 

a) happy	b) angry	c) brave	d) scared
----------	----------	----------	-----------
7. I always ..... sport on holidays. My favourite sport is football.
 

a) play	b) make	c) go	d) take
---------	---------	-------	---------
8. She is good at art. She loves ..... .
 

a) playing	b) swimming	c) painting	d) printing
------------	-------------	-------------	-------------
9. I like ..... maths. I am quite good at maths.
 

a) giving	b) making	c) playing	d) doing
-----------	-----------	------------	----------
10. I like reading books and ..... stories.
 

a) giving	b) writing	c) helping	d) doing
-----------	------------	------------	----------
11. We can't live without a ..... .
 

a) heart	b) beard	c) moustache	d) leg
----------	----------	--------------	--------
12. Who is the main ..... of the story?
 

a) character	b) website	c) adventure	d) heart
--------------	------------	--------------	----------
13. I usually go swimming on Fridays. I do it ..... .
 

a) kindly	b) clearly	c) nicely	d) regularly
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق المفاهيم الطالب  
من حل أسلحة المحادثة بشكل جيد



### 1. Speaking

#### Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

##### Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

##### Response

جملة الرد



She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.

هي شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هي تذهب إلى لاد العجائب.

She's Alice.

إنها «أليس».



He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

هو مشغول جداً. هو عادة متاخر ويجري بسرعة دالماً.

He's the White Rabbit.

إله «وليت رابيت».



He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.

هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جداً.

He's the Cheshire Cat.

إله «شيشاير كات».



#### Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

#### Complete the following dialogue:

##### ► Noha is asking Sara about reading.

**Noha :** Hi, Sara. How are you?

**Sara :** (1)...

**Noha :** Do you like reading?

**Sara :** (2)..... I like reading books very much.

**Noha :** (3)..... ?

**Sara :** I read books at the library.

**Noha :** (4)..... ?

**Sara :** My favourite book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

**Noha :** Is it interesting?

**Sara :** (5).....



## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق الطالب من كتابة  
فقرة بشكل جيد



### 1. How to write about your favourite book.

كيف تكتب عن كتابك المفضل.

- I like reading.
- I like reading books by (اسم الكتاب).
- My favourite book is (اسم القصة / الكتاب).
- It's about a girl/boy called (الشخصية).

#### Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences  
that present one topic or one idea.

افقره هو مجموعه من الجمل التي تقدم موضوعا  
او مكره واحدة.

#### Example

##### The book I like

I like reading because reading is my favourite hobby. I like reading books by Lewis Carroll. My favourite storybook is *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. It's about a girl called Alice. Alice has a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She meets a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She meets the White Rabbit which is always late. She also meets the Cheshire Cat which has a big smile, at last she meets the Queen of Hearts. She is always angry and shouts at people. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

### 2. How to write about your best friend.

كيف تكتب عن صديقك المفضل.

- My best friend is called (الاسم).
- He/She has got (صورة) hair.
- He/She likes (هواياته).
- I like him/her because he/she is a lot of fun.

#### Example

##### My best friend

I have many friends. We go to school together. I like to spend good time with them. We usually play together. We help each other. I like them all, but my best friend is called Fatma. She's got long, straight hair. She's got brown eyes. She's very friendly. She likes reading and playing squash. I like her because she's a lot of fun. She helps me when I need help. She usually visits me at home. My parents like her, too. They say that she's a good girl. I hope we go to the same university.

# TEST YOURSELF


**1** Read the following, then answer the questions:

I like reading short stories so much. One of my favourite stories is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland". It is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was a strange, but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. She met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal which helps Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person but Alice was not frightened of her.

**A** Answer the following questions:

1. What is this passage about?
  
2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?
  
3. What do you think of Alice?

**B** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to ..... .
 

a) the White Rabbit	b) the Cheshire Cat
c) Alice	d) the Queen of Hearts
  
5. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a ..... story.
 

a) detective	b) comic	c) children's	d) history
--------------	----------	---------------	------------
  
6. The underlined word "famous" means ..... .
 

a) unknown	b) silly	c) funny	d) well-known
------------	----------	----------	---------------

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is very ..... He has a big smile.
 

a) busy	b) brave	c) angry	d) funny
---------	----------	----------	----------
  
2. Alice had a lot of ..... in Wonderland.
 

a) adventures	b) places	c) devices	d) water
---------------	-----------	------------	----------
  
3. Sally is always angry and she shouts ..... people.
 

a) on	b) at	c) in	d) about
-------	-------	-------	----------
  
4. He's very ..... , so he is not frightened of anything.
 

a) brave	b) busy	c) angry	d) uncle
----------	---------	----------	----------
  
5. My grandfather is ..... . He gives us good advice.
 

a) bad	b) sensible	c) scary	d) worried
--------	-------------	----------	------------
  
6. She is the ..... of this country. She is the most important person there.
 

a) story	b) character	c) queen	d) worker
----------	--------------	----------	-----------

7. I usually visit my grandmother ..... a week.  
 a) double      b) second      c) two      d) twice

8. Nahla ..... go out tonight. She has an exam tomorrow.  
 a) can't      b) haven't      c) will      d) can

9. My little sister has ..... a doll.  
 a) get      b) got      c) gets      d) getting

10. What .... Sara got?  
 a) have      b) has      c) having      d) to have

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Have Samir got a beard? (.....)

2. How many lessons do you got today? (.....)

3. I can't open the door. I have got a key. (.....)

4. You can giving money to the poor. (.....)

**4** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite story"

 Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مذاب على فن نهاية الكتاب

1 I like meeting ..... people. They are very nice.  
 a) bored      b) boring  
 c) interesting      d) interested

2 Clever, brave and sensible are .....  
 a) nouns      b) verbs  
 c) adjectives      d) adverbs

3 Children often ..... to get what they want.  
 a) shout      b) go  
 c) write      d) make



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

			المفردات الرئيسية
exciting (adj)	مثير	secret (n/adj)	سر/سرى
garden (n)	حدائقه (منزل)	storm (n)	عاصفة
island (n)	جزيرة	treasure (n)	كنز
review (n)	نقد	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك

### Additional Vocabulary

			المفردات الإضافية
appearance (n)	مظاهر	personality (n)	شخصية
(be) called (v)	يسمى/يدعى	pool (n)	حوض السباحة
cool (adj)	رائع	the country (n)	الريف

### Language Expressions

have > lunch	يتناول الطعام	make >	a poster	يعمل ملصقاً إعلانياً
I He is a lot of fun.	إنه ممتع للغاية.		notes	يبدو أن ملاحظات

### Prepositions

different from	مختلف عن	think of	يعتقد في
difficult for	صعب لـ	travel around	يلتقل حول
far from	بعيد عن	work on a boat	يعمل على قارب

**Choose and complete:** island – the country – from – cool – garden

- 1 The weather is very ..... in spring.
- 2 My grandfather has a farm in .....
- 3 Elephantine ..... is in Aswan.
- 4 My school is far ..... my house.



### حروف الجر



## 1 Asking about someone's personality:

السؤال عن الصفات الشخصية لشخص ما

What + is/are + like? ما صفاتة؟ (الفاعل) + like?

- A: What is your teacher like?
- B: He's kind and friendly.

## 2 Asking about someone's hobbies:

السؤال عن هوايات شخص ما

What + do/does + like doing? ماذَا يَعْبُدُ أَنْ يَفْعُلُ؟ (الفاعل) + like doing?

- A: What do you like doing?
- B: I like playing football.

## 3 Joining words:

روابط (الاصطفاء / التاءضف ، سبب السبب) و (التعطف والإضافة)

and

He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together.

but

ولكن (للتناقض)

Basel can't run, but he's fast in his wheelchair.

because

لأن (للسبب)

I like Basel because he's a lot of fun.

so

لذلك (للنتيجة)

Basel's a lot of fun, so I like him.

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء اجزاء للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



## Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفتها
exciting	مثير	interesting	شيق

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
appear (v)	يظهر	-ance	تحويل الفعل لاسم	appearance (n)
excite (v)	يثير	-ing	تحويل الفعل لصفة	exciting (adj)



## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite book?

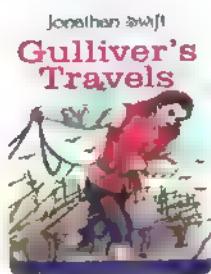
Lesson 5

Match the book reviews to the names of the books. Then write them.

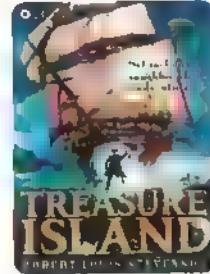
WB page 90



آن من المعرفات الذهرا



رحلات غوليفر



جزيرة الكو

My favourite book is *Anne of Green Gables* by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.

My favourite book is called *Gulliver's Travels*, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.

My favourite book is *Treasure Island*. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.



### Note:

orphan /'ɔ:fən/    treasure /'treʒər/    island /'aɪlənd/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

### Post-reading question:

- Which story did you like most? Why?

### 6 Listen and complete the sentences.

WB page 90

- 1 My name's Nevine. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
- 2 I'm Sayed. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
- 3 Hi, I'm Maya. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
- 4 I'm Rami. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
- 5 My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

Read Fady's blog post. Why can't Fady and Basel always do the same things?

Lesson 6

SB page 30

### Who's your best friend?

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a wheelchair<sup>(1)</sup> because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things together<sup>(2)</sup>. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12



(1) كرسي متحرك (2) معاً

### Life Skills

- 1 How are people in your life different from you?
- 2 Are differences important? Why/ Why not?



# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yunis likes watching TV because he thinks it's ..... .
  - a) bad
  - b) exciting
  - c) ugly
  - d) boring
  
2. You should never tell your ..... to other people.
  - a) secret
  - b) post
  - c) poster
  - d) note
  
3. Hany has got a ..... because he can't walk.
  - a) table
  - b) ladder
  - c) pool
  - d) wheelchair
  
4. Nasser is not very good at maths, ..... he is very good at English.
  - a) so
  - b) because
  - c) and
  - d) but
  
5. I like Ahmed because he is a lot of ..... .
  - a) fins
  - b) fans
  - c) fun
  - d) falls
  
6. This is not my book: it's different ..... mine.
  - a) from
  - b) at
  - c) on
  - d) about
  
7. She went to live with her grandparents in the ..... . It's quiet there.
  - a) capital
  - b) boat
  - c) country
  - d) city
  
8. He likes the sea. He wants to work ..... a boat.
  - a) out
  - b) to
  - c) on
  - d) of
  
9. We usually ..... lunch at four o'clock.
  - a) do
  - b) have
  - c) go
  - d) write
  
10. We have a house with a big ..... . We plant some trees there.
  - a) garden
  - b) pool
  - c) island
  - d) secret
  
11. Life is not easy ..... poor people.
  - a) for
  - b) at
  - c) on
  - d) in
  
12. This is a good book. I read a good ..... about it.
  - a) treasure
  - b) country
  - c) review
  - d) poster
  
13. We went on a school trip. It was ..... . I enjoyed so much.
  - a) cool
  - b) boring
  - c) strange
  - d) bad



# TEST YOURSELF

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed asks Hossam about his favourite sport.

**Ahmed :** What's your favourite sport, Hossam?

**Hossam :** (1) .....

**Ahmed :** Why are you good at it?

**Hossam :** (2) .....

**Ahmed :** (3) .....

**Hossam :** I play basketball in the club.

**Ahmed :** (4) .....

**Hossam :** I play basketball twice a week.

**Ahmed :** Can I play with you?

**Hossam :** (5) .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is something you don't want people to know about.

a) secretary	b) truth
c) secret	d) lie

2. He can't walk, he needs a .....

a) chain	b) swing
c) wing	d) wheelchair

3. The first day at school was ..... I liked it so much.

a) exciting	b) boring
c) ugly	d) bad

4. He likes reading and ..... video games.

a) writing	b) playing
c) making	d) doing

5. An email is a simple ..... sent through the internet.

a) gift	b) passage
c) message	d) notebook

6. He has a kind, friendly ..... We all like him.

a) storm	b) review
c) problem	d) personality

7. Students should ..... notes of what their teachers say.

a) make      b) do      c) play      d) catch

8. I love swimming, ..... I don't like swimming in the sea.

a) so      b) but      c) because      d) and

9. He is kind ..... he is very funny.

a) and      b) so      c) but      d) because

10. Mayar loves ..... on Fridays.

a) cook      b) cooked      c) cooking      d) to cooking

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Basmala gets up late on Friday so it's a holiday. ( . . . . )
2. I like football because I don't like watching matches on TV. ( . . . . )
3. I wasn't hungry, but I didn't eat. ( . . . . )
4. I love English, Arabic so Italian. ( . . . . )

 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"Your best friend"**



## **Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاناً عنده في نهاية الكتاب

1) "Gulliver's Travels", .... Jonathan Swift, is about a clever doctor.

a) for                    b) with                    c) at                    d) by

2) This book is about a brave boy ..... Jim.

a) is called              b) called                    c) calling                d) calls

3) I like Basel because he is a lot of ..... .

a) smile                  b) cool                    c) fun                    d) funny

# Review

on Unit



## Vocabulary

adventure	أَدْبُورٌ
island	جُزْءٌ
angry	غَاضِبٌ
appearance	صَفَّةٌ
moustache	مُسْتَقْبَلٌ
beard	حَاجَرٌ
personality	شَخْصِيَّةٌ
runner	جَارٌِ/مُنْسَابٌ
character	شَخْصٌ
children's story	صَاحِبُ الْمَكَانِ
sensible	عَاقِلٌ/صَدِيقٌ
curly	مُكْبِرٌ
sports star	نَجْمٌ رِّياضِيٌّ
storm	مَهْرَبٌ
exciting	مُثْرِيكٌ
strange	غَرِيبٌ
famous	مُهَمَّ
team	طَافِيَّةٌ
the country	الْمَدِينَةُ
wonderland	بَلَادُ الْجَنَاحِيَّةِ
friendly	مُهَمَّ
treasure	كَلْمَرٌ
wheelchair	كرْسِيسْ كَلْمَرٌ
fan	فَنِّيَّةٌ/فَنِّيَّةٌ

## Language

### 1. Have / Has got

#### Affirmative

- I have got short, curly hair.

- Mazin has got a bike.

#### Negative

- They haven't got curly hair.

- My dad hasn't got a beard.

#### Question

- Have you got glasses?

- Has your father got a beard?

### 2. Can / Can't

#### Affirmative

- We can give money to help poor people.

- I can read English books.

#### Negative

- I can't pick up that box. My arms are weak.

- I can't swim well.

#### Question

- A: Can you play the drums?

B: Yes, I can.

- A: Can Eman play chess?

B: No, she can't.

## Skills

### Describing a character from a story

- She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.
- شَفِيقَةٌ مُهَمَّةٌ وَشَجَرَةٌ مُهَمَّةٌ. هَذَا تَحْبَبُه.

- She's "Alice".
- أَلِيزَهُ "إِلِيزَهُ".

- He is very busy - and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.
- مُهَمَّهُ عَالِيٌّ جَدِيدٌ. هُوَ يَعْلَمُ بِمُهَمَّهٍ بِعِظَمٍ بِعِظَمٍ.

- He's the White Rabbit.
- هُوَ الْأَوْابِتُ رَابِّتُ.

- He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.
- هُوَ حَيْوانٌ مُهَمَّهٌ بِعِظَمٍ بِعِظَمٍ. لَدُغَهُ مُهَمَّهٌ بِعِظَمٍ بِعِظَمٍ.

- He's the Cheshire Cat.
- هُوَ شَيْشِيرٌ مُهَمَّهٌ بِعِظَمٍ بِعِظَمٍ.



## Listening

 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

**1.** What is your favourite book?

- a) Alice.
- c) Gulliver's Travels.
- b) Treasure Island.
- d) Anne of Green Gables.

**2.** Who wrote it?

- a) Jonathan Swift.
- c) Robert Louis.
- b) Lucy Maud.
- d) Shakespeare.

**3.** What is it about?

- a) A sailor.
- c) An orphan.
- b) A brave boy.
- d) A doctor.

**4.** Where does he/she work?

- a) In a garden.
- c) At a hospital.
- b) On a boat.
- d) At a school.

## **B** Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Asmaa and Sara are talking about sport.**

Sara : Hi, Asmaa. How are you?

## Asmaa : (1).

**Sara** : (2).

**Asmaa** : My favourite sport is football.

**Sara** ::(3)

**Asmaa :** I play it at the club.

**Sara** : Who is your favourite player?

### Asmaa : (4)

**Sara** : Does he score a lot of goals?

## Asmaa : (5)

## C Reading Comprehension

### Read the following, then answer the questions:

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark, straight hair. He lives in Qalyoubia governorate with his mum, dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He likes it greatly. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. I like him because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?
2. What do you think of Akram?
3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Akram has got ..... straight hair.	a) dark	b) light	c) red	d) brown
5. Akram lives in ..... governorate.	a) Qena	b) Qalyoubia	c) Gharbia	d) Cairo
6. Akram doesn't like art because he is ..... at art.	a) good	b) brilliant	c) clever	d) bad



## Vocabulary and Structure

#### C) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haaland ..... many goals every year.	a) plays	b) helps	c) takes	d) scores
2. I am a ..... of Mohammad Salah.	a) fin	b) fan	c) fun	d) customer
3. He has three cars and three houses. He is very .....	a) rich	b) poor	c) weak	d) fast

4. There are many interesting ..... in this story.

F · F · English

a) devices      b) characters      c) players      d) actors

5. A ..... person is the person who always thinks carefully.

a) fat      b) strong      c) sensible      d) lazy

6. Hani uses a ..... to go to school because he can't walk.

a) pencil case      b) wheelchair      c) sharpener      d) pencil

7. My teacher asked me to ..... a poster about a famous person.

a) make      b) do      c) stay      d) save

8. ..... got any questions to ask?

a) You have      b) Have you      c) Do you      d) You do

9. My son ..... got blue eyes.

a) does      b) is      c) have      d) has

10. I can't ..... my coffee. It's too hot.

a) to drink      b) drinks      c) drink      d) drinking

**5** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I'm tired, so I went to bed very late.

(.....)

2. We can't go now. I am ready.

(.....)

3. The music is so loud. I can't hearing you.

(.....)

4. She can jumps very high.

(.....)



## Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A famous sports star"



Assess your  
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 - 64%

Practise more

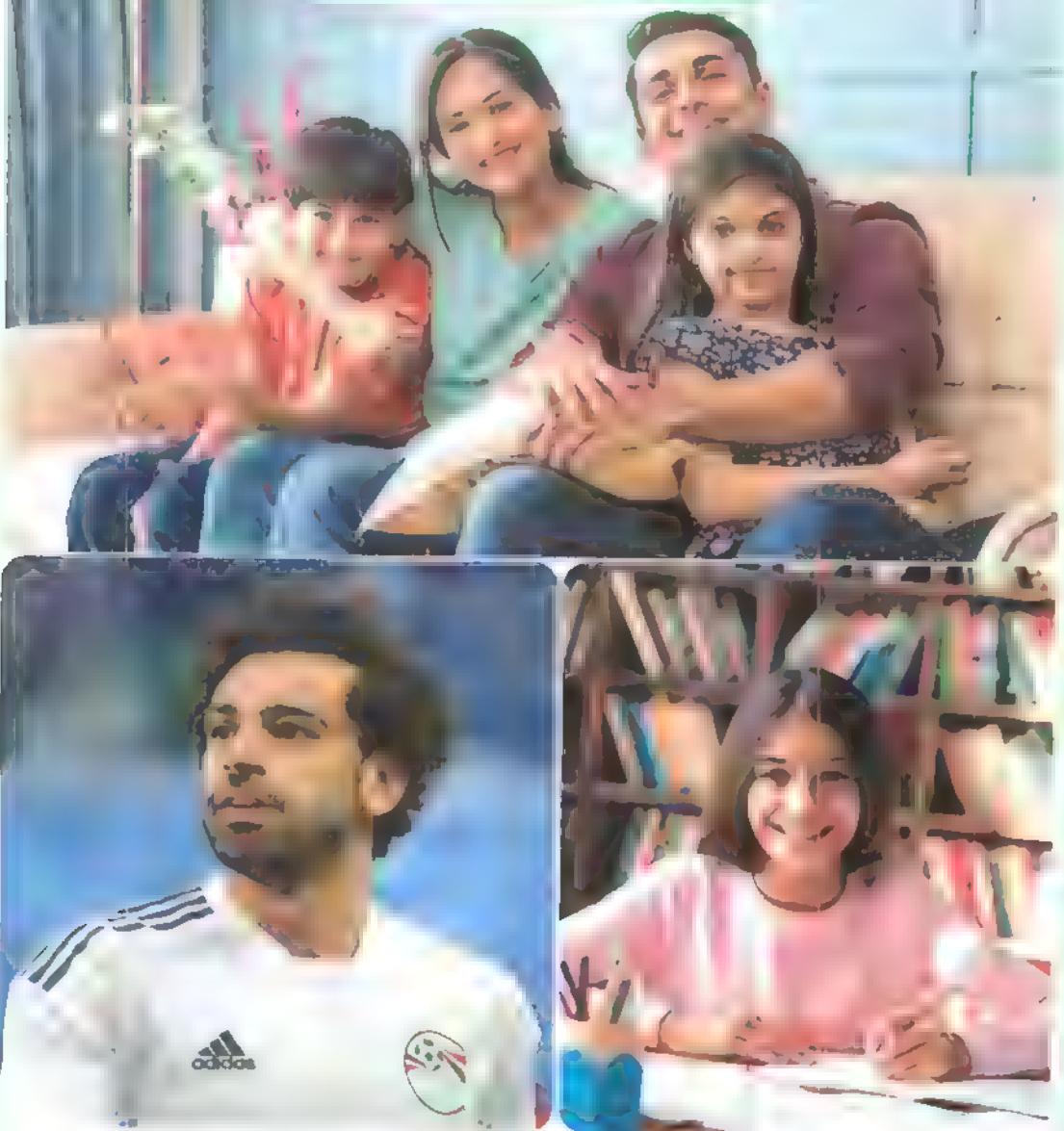
65 - 84%

Solve 3rd demand

85 - 100%

Well done!

## Review A



**Units 1, 2 & 3**

# Review A

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What is your father's job?

SB page 32

Read the text. Write a title and circle the correct words.

1.

This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark, curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



2.

This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.



3.

Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.



4.

Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with her toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.



Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Malak is funny?

**Pre-listening question:**

- Do you think that children like their schools? Why?

Listen and circle the correct words.

WB page 93

**Aya** Hi! My name is Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I have got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject is Art. I love drawing. I am not very good at it, but I want to be! We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Maths and before English. I have got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.



Listen to Shady talking about his day. Circle the correct words. SB page 33

Lesson 8

**Woman** What time do you get up, Shady?

**Shady** I usually get up at a quarter to seven on a school day.



**Woman** How do you travel to school?

**Shady** I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by car.

**Woman** Do you like school?

**Shady** Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

**Woman** And what do you do after school?

**Shady** I sometimes play sport. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

**Woman** Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess?

**Shady** No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music or watch TV.

**Post-listening question:** - What do you usually do in your free time?



## Unit 4

# We're using technology!

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** A text message conversation; a text about hobbies

Tapescripts



**Writing** A paragraph and a poster about online safety

**Listening** A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call

**Speaking** Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions

**Language** There is / there are; the present continuous

**Life Skills** Problem solving; resilience



قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الاتقان حيث إنها موضع اهتمام متداولة.

قم بإذبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لصفحة التقويم وتقسيم الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية	الطاولة
3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثة الأبعاد
click on the icon	يقر على أيقونة (بالكمبيوتر)
guess (ed) (v)	يختمن
look at a website	يلقي نظرة على موقع الكتروني
mouse (n)	فأرة الكمبيوتر
MP3 player (n)	مشغل ام بي ثري
phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف
print (ed) (v)	يطبع
printer (n)	طابعة
send a photo	يرسل صورة
send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
tablet (n)	الجهاز اللوحي (تابلت)
take a selfie	يلقط صورة شخصية
tap on the icon	يضغط على أيقونة (بالهاتف)
use technology	يسخدم التكنولوجيا
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد الكتروني

### Language Expressions

العبارات اللغوية	يصنم نموذجاً
design > an icon	يصمم ايقونة
do > computer studies	يدرس الكمبيوتر
make > chess pieces	يرتب قطع الشطرنج
homework	يقوم بعمل الواحد
sleep > in a chair	ينام على كرسي

### Prepositions

حروف الجر
at the moment
charge ... with

في هذه اللحظة

يشحن ...

look for

on a laptop/ a computer/ a mobile phone  
على اللاب توب/ الكمبيوتر/ الهاتف، المحمول

### Choose and complete:

### MP3 player – for – tap – use

- 1 I can't find my pen. Will you help me look for it?
- 2 Most people use technology nowadays.
- 3 I listen to music on my MP3 player.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
المفردات الرئيسية  
والعبارات اللغوية  
و حروف الجر.



## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past participle
mean	يعني/يقتضي	meant	meant
send	يرسل	sent	sent
<b>الكلمات وعدها</b>			
Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكستها
new	جديد	old	قديم
online	عبر الانترنت	offline	غير متصل بالانترنت
sleep	ينام	wake up	يسقط

## Language Notes

## (1) Would you like to + inf. ....?

هل تود أن/هل ت يريد أن ...?  
انا اود ان

I'd (would) like to + inf.

- Would you like to use a 3D printer?
- I'd like to take a selfie.

## (2)

الاسم المركب من كلمتين عند جمعه نجمع الكلمة الثانية فقط.

- laptop computers / mobile phones.

## (3) Prepositions of place:

حروف در المكان:



next to



behind



in front of



under



near

## (4) An MP3 player

لاحظ استخدام an مع كلمة MP3 player لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك حيث إن حرف (M) ينطق (em).

- There's an MP3 player on the desk.

## (5) one of + (اسم جمجم) + فعل مفرد + (اسم جمجم)

واحد من ....

- One of my friends likes computer studies.

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثري للدراسة والفهم وليس لحفظ.



## Definitions

A printer الطابعة

a machine which is connected to a computer and can make copies of information

An MP3 player مشغل ام بي تري

a machine or a computer program<sup>(4)</sup> that plays music

A blog مدونة

is an online<sup>(5)</sup> diary.

## التعريفات

1 الله

2 متحركة

3 نسخة

4 برنامج

5 عبر الانترنت

## Words and Synonyms

Word

الكلمة

Synonym (Meaning)

مرادفتها

send

بررسل

post

يرسل بالبريد/ينشر

small

صغير

tiny

صغير جداً

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word

الكلمة

Suffix

اللاحقة

Function

الوظيفة

The new word الكلمة الجديدة

charge (v)

يشحن

-er

تحويل الفعل لاسم

charger (n)

شاحن

print (v)

يطبع

-er

تحويل الفعل لاسم

printer (n)

الطاولة

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word

الكلمة

Similar word

الكلمة المشابهة

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجل ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.

tap

يضغط

tape

شريط

click

ينقر

clock

ساعة حاتم

mouse

فأرة

mouth

فم

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One of my sisters \_\_\_\_\_ in primary school.

a) are

b) is

c) has

d) have

2 To get the noun from the verb "print", add the suffix "

a) -er

b) -or

c) -ment

d) -ness



## B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 4

### Pre-reading question:

- What forms of technology do you use at school?

Read Ziad's description of his classroom. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

SB pages 34 & 35



- (1) الأجهزة لل لوحة
- (2) أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمول
- (3) فارة
- (4) طابعة
- (5) بطباعة
- (6) هاتف محمول
- (7) يشحن
- (8) شاحن الهاتف
- (9) مشغل أفلام

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets<sup>1</sup> in school. There are two laptop computers<sup>2</sup> in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse<sup>3</sup>. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer<sup>4</sup>, too. My friend, Omar, is printing<sup>5</sup> his homework.

I have got a mobile phone<sup>6</sup> but it's in my bag – we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging<sup>7</sup> his phone with a phone charger<sup>8</sup>. And he's got a new MP3 player<sup>9</sup>, it's small and blue. Can you see it?

### Post-reading question: Choose:

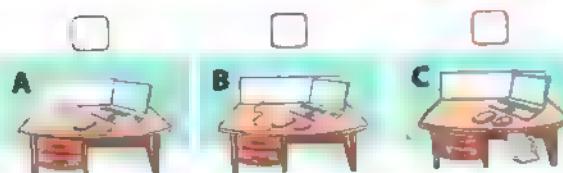
- The text is about using ..... in the classroom.

a) mobile phones      b) technology      c) nature      d) sports

Listen to the description of the classroom. Tick (✓) the correct picture.

SB page 35

There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player, but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.



We're using technology! 147

### Pre-reading question:

- What is your father doing now?

**Read the text message conversation. What is in this photo? SB page 36**



 - Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?

- I'm playing chess online. I'm winning at the moment!

 - Are you using your new laptop?

- Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing?

- I'm doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about **3D printers**<sup>[2]</sup>.

- What are your mum and Alia doing?

 - They're taking selfies<sup>(2)</sup>. I'm sending you one of their photos now.



- (1) عبر الإنترنت
- (2) الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
- (3) بالطبع صور شخصية

- Oh yes! That's a great photo.

◀ ▶ Текст и программа



Note:

website /'websaɪt/  
information /ɪnfə'meɪʃn/

**تعلم كيفية بطيء الكلمات التالية:**

### **Post-reading questions:**

1 What game is granddad playing online?  
2 Where is Adam looking for information about 3D printers?



# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

### ► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought a new MP3 ..... to play music.

F - F1F معرفة

a) computer      b) player      c) speaker      d) printer

2. I use the ..... to recharge my mobile phone.

F - F1F فهم

a) earphone      b) tablet      c) charger      d) mouse

3. You can use the ..... to click on different icons on the computer.

WB

a) mouse      b) printer      c) charger      d) mouth

4. I ..... on the icon many times, but the mobile didn't work.

F - F1F اكتشاف

a) clicked      b) tapped      c) rung      d) knocked

5. I'd like to ..... a selfie in front of the river.

WB

a) make      b) take      c) tap      d) click

6. We use our ..... in the classroom to learn.

WB

a) chargers      b) tablets      c) players      d) phones

7. A/An ..... is a kind of computer.

F - F1F اكتشاف

a) white board      b) charger      c) MP3 player      d) laptop

8. I like ..... models. This is a model plane.

WB

a) sending      b) writing      c) making      d) doing

9. The whiteboard is ..... the teacher.

WB

a) between      b) next      c) behind      d) in front

10. I like to play games ..... my mobile phone.

WB

a) in      b) on      c) at      d) for

11. The book is full of useful .....

WB

a) design      b) white board      c) information      d) printer

12. To know some information about animals, ..... at this website.

WB

a) look      b) click      c) tap      d) write

13. A blog is a/an online .....

WB

a) diary      b) dairy      c) day      d) date

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you ..... me a text message when you arrive?  
 a) take      b) send      c) play      d) do
2. There is a keyboard ..... to the laptop.  
 a) far      b) in front      c) next      d) under
3. My brother likes to ..... computer studies.  
 a) make      b) use      c) send      d) do
4. He ..... his mobile to talk to his friends.  
 a) makes      b) smiles      c) uses      d) sends
5. Computers and mobiles are examples of .....  
 a) food      b) technology      c) subjects      d) hobbies
6. He's charging his phone ..... a phone charger.  
 a) in      b) on      c) with      d) by
7. We can ..... a video call with our cousins in England.  
 a) make      b) take      c) see      d) send
8. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know.  
 a) receive      b) make      c) send      d) play
9. ..... the icon on your computer.  
 a) Give      b) Fill      c) Click      d) Play
10. I looked ..... my watch everywhere, but I didn't find it.  
 a) after      b) at      c) for      d) up
11. Marwan likes playing games ..... . He is on the internet every day.  
 a) online      b) offline      c) line      d) outline
12. There is a mouse ..... the laptop on the teacher's desk.  
 a) far      b) in front      c) next      d) near

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخالص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## C Language



There are ...

There are ...

**There Is +** ... اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ... .

- There is a printer.
- There is some water.

**Affirmative**

**There are +** ... اسم جمجم ... .

There are two laptops.

- There are some boys here.

**There isn't +** ... اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ... .

There isn't a printer.

**Negative**

There isn't any water.

**There aren't +** ... اسم جمجم ... .

There aren't any laptops.

- There aren't any boys here.

**Is there +** ... اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد ... ?

Is there a printer?

**Yes/No**

Is there any water?

**questions**

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

**Are there +** ... اسم جمجم ... ?

Are there any laptops?

Are there any boys here?

Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.



**Remember**

### some & any

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض (في الجملة المثبتة). ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There are **some** apples in this dish.

- There is **some** rice in this dish.

- يمكن استخدامها أيضًا في العرض والطلب:

- Would you like **some** tea?

(عرض)

- Can I have **some** books?

(طلب)

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى أي (في الجملة المعنفية والسؤال بمعنى هل). ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There aren't **any** tablets in my classroom. - Is there **any** juice in the bottle?



**Get it!**

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1 There are any notebooks in your bag?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Are there**) لوجود علامة استفهام (صيغة سؤال).

2 There are any oranges on the tree.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**some**) لأن الجملة مثبتة.

## Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now.

ـ يستخدم التعبير عن شئون عددهم بمعنى الآء (وهيأت الكلام).

**She ~~is writing~~, a letter at the moment.**

I'd like to tell a story now.

		<b>Form</b>	<b>التكوين</b>
I	am	.	
He			. I am <b>playing</b> football.
She	is	.	
It			. He is <b>reading</b> a book.
You			
We	are	.	
They			They are <b>swimming</b> .

## Key words الكلمات الدالة

(now - ا الان - Look! - انظر! - Listen! - انصت - Watch out! - احتذر still - احتفظ

**at the moment** / **at present** - في المُوقَتُ الْحَاضِرِ / في هذه اللحظة

- My grandfather is using his laptop now.

- My uncle is watching TV at the moment

• عند إضافة الـ (In) لل فعل:

(take - taking) - (come - coming) - (sing - singing) - (run - running) - (jump - jumping)

(put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)

(die - dying) - (lie - lying)



### **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1 Ramy study English at the moment.

الدالة على المدار المستمر *(at the moment is studying)*

(2) Watch out! A car comes.

الدالة على المضارع المستمر **Watch out!** **Present continuous** **is** **being**

### 3 I can't go out. I do my homework.

الإجابة المتصدرة: **لا** لأن لا يستطيع الخروج الآن، أي رهن فعل الواجب مخارات مستمر.

# PRACTICE

## Language Expressions

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

► 1. There's ..... cheese in the fridge.

a) any      b) some      c) a lot      d) many

2. I'm very thirsty. Can I have ..... cold water, please?

a) many      b) a lot      c) some      d) any

3. There ..... a printer above the table.

a) is      b) are      c) has      d) have

4. Are there ..... tablets?

a) some      b) a      c) any      d) a lot

5. There isn't an MP3 player, but there ..... two mobile phones.

a) are      b) aren't      c) is      d) isn't

6. ..... any juice in the bottle?

a) Is there      b) Are there      c) There is      d) There are

7. There ..... any notebooks in my bag.

a) is      b) isn't      c) are      d) aren't

8. There aren't ..... boys in the class.

a) some      b) any      c) no      d) much

9. There isn't ..... meat on the table.

a) a      b) a lot      c) some      d) any

10. ..... any girls in your class?

a) There is      b) Is there      c) There are      d) Are there

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. There aren't some eggs in the fridge.

( ..... )

2. A: Is there any milk in the bottle? B: No, there is.

( ..... )

3. Is there any figs in the fridge?

( ..... ) T - F P اعماق

4. We don't have some books on the shelves.

( ..... )

5. There aren't any rice in the dish.

( ..... ) T - F P اعماق

6. Can I have any juice, please?

( ..... ) T - F P اعماق

## Time to Practise



### 1 Choose the correct answer to make a word.

► 1. They ..... at websites for information now.  
 a) are looking      b) looking      c) looked      d) look

► 2. Look! Adel ..... in the garden.  
 a) works      b) are working  
 c) is working      d) work

► 3. My sisters are ..... the dishes at the moment.  
 a) wash      b) washes      c) washing      d) washed

► 4. The boys ..... in the playground now.  
 a) play      b) played      c) are playing      d) playing

► 5. My friend ..... his homework now.  
 a) printed      b) is printing  
 c) printing      d) prints

► 6. Mum and my sister ..... a cake at the moment.  
 a) is baking      b) are baking      c) bakes      d) baked

► 7. Basmala ..... sleeping now.  
 a) can      b) does      c) is      d) has

► 8. Some kids ..... noise inside the class.  
 a) is making      b) makes      c) making      d) are making

► 9. ..... is cleaning the house at the moment.  
 a) Mayada      b) Mayada and her mum  
 c) We      d) I

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. She is watches a nice programme now. ( ) صواب

► 2. Ahmed is played chess online. ( ) صواب

► 3. I drink tea at the moment. ( ) صواب

► 4. Ali and Kamal is riding their bikes. ( ) صواب

► 5. Listen! She sings beautifully. ( ) صواب

► 6. My little sister aren't doing her homework at the moment. ( ) صواب

لحل المزدوج من التدريبات، قم بإدخاله إلى Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملف التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تطوير مهارات الطالب  
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### How to write a description of your classroom.

كيفية كتابة وصف عن جرتك الدراسية.

- My name's (الاسم).
- We often use (اسم الجهاز) in school.
- There are (العدد) tablet computers in the classroom.
- There aren't any (اسم الجهاز).
- There's a printer, too.
- We use it to print our homework.
- I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school.

#### Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

استخدم علامة لتقدير المقرر عن موضوع

مفردك.

#### Example

#### Classroom objects

My name's Samy. Our life is going fast now because of technology. Technology helps us get information easily. We often use tablets in school. There are four tablet computers in the classroom. We use them to look for information on the internet. There aren't any laptops. There's a printer, too. We use it to print our homework. There is a board. The teacher always explains the lessons on it. I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games.

#### Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your classroom"

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 4

Lessons  
(1 & 2)

17

نصل الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What do you love?  
 a) Park.  
 b) Break.  
 c) Nature.  
 d) Technology.
2. What is your favourite hobby?  
 a) Playing video games.  
 b) Watching TV.  
 c) Playing football.  
 d) Reading.
3. How often do you play on your laptop?  
 a) Often.  
 b) Always.  
 c) Usually.  
 d) Never.
4. How often do you play on your mobile phone?  
 a) Usually.  
 b) Always.  
 c) Never.  
 d) Sometimes.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A ..... is a photo you take for yourself.  
 a) door      b) printer      c) selfie      d) castle
2. My computer ..... makes a loud click.  
 a) mouse      b) printer      c) charger      d) tablet
3. Young people use the ..... to listen to music.  
 a) charger      b) MP3 player      c) printer      d) mouse
4. You can ..... on the icon and find information.  
 a) tap      b) tape      c) try      d) look
5. Mr. Osama is ..... his phone with a phone charger.  
 a) wearing      b) killing      c) breaking      d) charging
6. We usually use mobile phones to send ..... messages.  
 a) test      b) taste      c) text      d) taxi
7. There is a phone charger ..... of the printer.  
 a) next      b) behind      c) in front      d) under
8. My sister ..... me with my homework at the moment.  
 a) helps      b) helping      c) helped      d) is helping

9. .... a lot of supermarkets in your city?

a) Is there      b) There is      c) There are      d) Are there

10. There aren't .... trees in front of my house.

a) any      b) some      c) a      d) a lot

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Manal having lunch with her family now.

( ..... )

2. There isn't some sugar in my tea.

( ..... )

3. I'm play chess online now.

( ..... ) اصنافه

4. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop.

( ..... ) اصنافه

**Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Technology you use in the classroom"**



**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجانب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1) If you ..... an icon for "take a selfie", what will it look like?

a) design      b) tap  
c) click      d) do

2) There are two ..... in the classroom.

a) laptop computer      b) laptops computers  
c) laptops computer      d) laptop computers

3) My brother studies at ..... university in the USA.

a) an      b) some  
c) a      d) much



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

dancer (n)

راقصة programme (n)

برنام

dictionary (n)

قاموس school uniform (n)

زي مدرسي

nature (n)

الطبيعة wave (d) (v)

يلوح بيده

### Additional Vocabulary

break time (n)

وقت الفسحة puzzle (n)

لغز

drop (ped) (v)

يسقط stay (ed) (v)

يقيم/يطلب

### Language Expressions

bring &gt; a drink

go يحضر مشروبات

يذهب للخارج

do &gt; a hobby

have يهدي هواية

لديه هواية

talk to &gt; a friend

mime يتحدث مع صديق

يمثل حدثنا

give &gt; advice

take يعطى نصيحة

يسجل ملاحظات

### Prepositions

at break/lunchtime

في الفسحة/وقت الغداء

put my hand up

أرفع يدي لأعلى

on an MP3 player

على مشغل الموسقى

smile at

يتسم لـ

programme on

البرنامج يعرض

write with

يكتب باستخدام

### Choose and complete: programme - at - stay - wave

1 A: What's your favourite TV ? B: Wicked Tuna.

بهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والعبارات اللغوية  
وحرف الجر

2 Smile the camera to get a good photo.

3 We don't ..... in class during the break.

### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

#### Present

bring

يحضر

#### Past simple

brought

wear

يرتدى

wore

#### تصريف الاموال غير المنتظمة

#### Past participle

brought

worn

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	similar/same	تشابه
stay	يقىء/يقىم/يظل	leave	يقدر
hot	حر	cold	بارد

## Language Notes

احرص على الالتفات إلى الملاحظات اللغوية جيدا لأنها موضوع نسخة امتحانية.



### 1 like/don't like + being

يحب/يحب لا يكون ....

- I like **being** in the garden.
- I don't like **being** in the house.

### 2 use + المفعول + to + inf. / for + v + ing

يستخدم ....

- Hala is **using** her mobile phone **to make/ for making** a video call.

### 3 need + (n) يحتاج / need to + (inf.) يحتاج إلى أن

جزء إلزامي للدرسسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

- I **need** **some water**, please.
- I **need to drink** some water, please.



## Vocabulary Builder

### Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
hot	حر	warm	دافئ
stay	يقىء/يقىم/يظل	remain	يقىء/يظل

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
act (v)	يتصرف	-ion		تحويل الفعل لاسم		action (n)	عمل/تصرف
dance (v)	يرقص	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		dancer (n)	راقصة

## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-listening question:** - What are your brothers/sisters doing now?

Answers

Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What's Randa doing?

SB page 38

**Randa** Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

**Sherifa** Oh, hello Randa! Where are you? Are you at home?

**Randa** Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

**Sherifa** What's mum doing?

**Randa** She's looking at a website. She wants to make a cake.

**Sherifa** Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet?

**Randa** No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

**Sherifa** Is grandmother watching TV?

**Randa** Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme on now.

**Sherifa** Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing?

**Randa** They're taking selfies in the garden.

**Sherifa** Again? They are always taking selfies!

**Randa** I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she is listening to music on her Mp3 player.

**Sherifa** She's a good dancer! What are you doing, Randa?

**Randa** I am talking to you!

**Sherifa** Oh yes!

### Post-listening questions:

- 1 Do you think they are enjoying their time? Why?
- 2 If you were Sherifa, would you return home quickly to be with your family?



(1) ماما

(2)阿嬷

**Pre-listening question:** - What do you like to do when you have free time?

Read the conversation between Leila and Judy. Correct the mistakes.

Listen and check your answers.

WB page 97

**Judy** Hi, Leila. Where are you?

**Leila** Hi, Judy. I'm in the park with my family.

**Judy** What are you doing there?

**Leila** I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.

**Judy** Are your brothers sitting, too?

**Leila** No, they aren't. They're playing football.

**Judy** Is your dad playing football with them?

**Leila** No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

**Judy** What's your mother doing?

**Leila** Er, wait... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks, Mum!

**Post-listening question:**

- Do you think Leila will feel sad because her father isn't with them?

**Pre-reading question:**

Lesson 8

- What are you doing now?

Read the puzzle. Match the numbers with the people.

SB Page 39

Soha is not making a video call, but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology. Fatma has got long, curly hair. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

**Post-reading question:**

- In which room are the girls sitting?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Do you like using new technology? Why/ Why not?

**Read about Wael and Mazin. Who has got a laptop?**

I love **technology**! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it's Computer Studies! At break and **lunchtime**, I stay in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

**Wael, age 12**

I love **nature**. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and **insects<sup>(5)</sup>** all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

**Mazin, age 13**

**Post-reading questions:**

(1) What does Mazin like?

(2) Is it good to have a hobby that you do all the time? Why/ Why not?



**SB Page 40**



الเทคโนโลยيا (1)

وقت الطعام (2)

بيهقي/رقيم (3)

الطبيعة (4)

حشرات (5)



**Note:**

تعلم كيفية بطق الكلمة التالية:

**insect /insekt/**

## **Life Skills**

1. What do you think of Wael and Mazin?

2. Who do you think needs help?

3. What advice can you give him?



# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love ..... I like watching trees, animals and flowers.  
 a) technology      b) games      c) nature      d) sport
2. Pupils should wear their school ..... at school.  
 a) uniforms      b) forms      c) reforms      d) performs
3. Never ..... to your friend during lessons.  
 a) talk      b) take      c) use      d) make
4. We can use a ..... if we don't know the meaning of a word.  
 a) puzzle      b) diary      c) dictionary      d) notebook
5. I'll go to the kitchen and ..... a drink to my grandmother.  
 a) do      b) mime      c) watch      d) bring
6. The boy went on the bus and ..... to his mother.  
 a) waved      b) stayed      c) moved      d) dropped
7. I like to write ..... that pen. It's really good.  
 a) in      b) for      c) to      d) with
8. If I want to ask my teacher, I ..... my hand up.  
 a) fly      b) wave      c) put      d) drop
9. My little sister always ..... water on the floor.  
 a) drops      b) writes      c) gives      d) brings
10. A: How long did you ..... in Alexandria? B: Two weeks.  
 a) stay      b) say      c) leave      d) visit
11. We usually have our sandwiches ..... break.  
 a) by      b) at      c) in      d) with
12. It's usually ..... in summer.  
 a) dark      b) cold      c) sunny      d) cool

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is a firefighter. He always wears his	at work.	
a) rule                      b) uniform                      c) form		d) picture
2. I always listen to songs ..... my MP3 player.		
a) in                      b) on                      c) by		d) with
3. Our teacher always smiles ..... us. He's friendly.		
a) with                      b) of                      c) at		d) about
4. I ..... many hobbies on holidays.		
a) bring                      b) take                      c) make		d) do
5. I usually ..... notes during the lesson.		
a) take                      b) help                      c) do		d) bring
6. I like doing ..... They make me think.		
a) toys                      b) bikes                      c) kites		d) puzzles
7. Mum ..... the best cakes.		
a) designs                      b) takes                      c) makes		d) does
8. It's her favourite programme ..... now.		
a) on                      b) in                      c) with		d) by
9. I like playing video games on my .....		
a) kite                      b) MP3 player                      c) laptop		d) dictionary
10. Students should learn how to use their ..... in English classes.		
a) hobbies                      b) posters                      c) puzzles		d) dictionaries
11. I use my phone ..... send text messages to my friends.		
a) to                      b) for                      c) by		d) at
12. I always ..... advice to my little brother.		
a) get                      b) bring                      c) take		d) give

لحل المريض من التدريبات، قم بطباعة الـ **جزء** الخاص بكل درسرين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

© EFL Publications

الطباعة

الطبع



# Language

## The Present Continuous Tense

ال الزمن المضارع الممتد

### Negative

النفي

I	am not	.	I am not playing football.
He			
She			
It			
You			
We			
They			
	Is not (isn't)	-	
		↓ Inf + ing	
		↓ ↓	
			• He is not (isn't) reading a book.
			• They are not swimming.
	are not (aren't)	-	

### Question

السؤال

Yes/No questions	Am Is Are	}	subj. الفاعل	+	inf. + ing ...?
	A: Are you studying French?				
	- B: Yes, I am.			- B: No, I am not.	
Wh- questions	Q. Word +	am is are	subj. الفاعل	+	inf. + ing ...?
	كلمة الاستفهام				
	A: What are you doing? - B: I'm helping my father.				



Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 A: You are taking a selfie? B: No, I am writing an email. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are you) لأنها صيغة سؤال لوجود علامة استفهام.
- 2 Why is Sara cry? (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (cry) لأن is يتبعها فعل ماضٍ يليه (ing).
- 3 He doesn't sending a text message. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (isn't) لأن الفعل sending آخره (ing).

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

► 1. ..... taking a photo?

a) She is      b) Is she      c) She has

d) Has she

2. A: Is she watching TV? B: No, she .....

a) is      b) isn't      c) does

d) doesn't

3. She is not ..... a video call, but she is talking to her friend.

a) making      b) makes      c) make

d) to make

4. Be quiet! Your little brother .....

a) sleeps      b) sleep      c) is sleeping

d) has slept

5. Sally ..... her homework at the moment. She is cooking.

a) doesn't do      b) does      c) is doing

d) isn't doing

6. We ..... watching TV, but we are making lunch.

a) don't      b) haven't      c) aren't

d) isn't

7. What is John ..... at the moment?

a) do      b) doing      c) does

d) did

8. A: Are you wearing brown shoes? B: Yes, I .....

a) am      b) is      c) are

d) was

9. A: Is Tamer working at the moment? B: No, he ..... washing his car.

a) doesn't      b) does      c) is

d) isn't

10. What ..... your friends doing at the moments?

a) do      b) have      c) are

d) is

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He isn't study his lessons now.

(.....)

2. Does your brother sleeping now?

(.....)

3. He is writing emails at the moment?

(.....)

4. What games do you playing online?

(.....)

5. A: Are you eating? B: Yes, I do.

(.....)

6. What are the girls does now?

(.....)



## D Skills

يهدف هذا الجرء إلى تهيئ الطلاب  
من حل أسلمة العادات بشكل جيد.



### 1. Speaking

**Ask and answer questions about your friend.**

السؤال والاجابة عن صديقك.

#### Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

#### Response

جملة الرد

Situation	Response
 Are you sitting next to your best friend?	هل تجلسين بجوار صديقتك المفضلة؟ 
 Is she wearing black shoes?	هل هي ترتدي حذاء أسود؟ 
 What are your friends doing?	ماذا يفعل أصدقاؤك؟ انهم يشاهدون التلفاز. 

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

**Complete the following dialogue:**

► Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.

Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi, Judy. (1).....

Judy : The park! (2).....?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree in the park. It's very sunny.

Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too?

Leila : (3)..... They are playing football.

Judy : (4)....?

Leila : No, my father isn't sitting with us. He's working today.

Judy : What is your mother doing?

Leila : (5).....



## 2. Write it right

### 1. How to write about what your family are doing now.

كتبة الكتابة عن ما تفعله عائلتك الان

- My name's (الاسم).  
- I live in (المكان).
- My father is (الوظيفة).  
- I have got (العدد) brothers and (العدد) sisters.  
- My mother is (الوظيفة). My father is (الوظيفة).

#### Writing tips

Try reading your paragraph out loud to make sure it makes sense.

### Example

#### What your family are doing now

My name's Amal. I live in Cairo. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. I have got two brothers and no sisters. I am in preparatory one. My brothers go to primary school. We are a happy family. All of us are busy now. My mother is in the kitchen. She is cooking dinner. She is a good cook. Her food is delicious. My father is watching TV. He's watching a football match at the moment. My brothers are playing video games. I am doing computer studies. It's my favourite subject. We are waiting for our dinner. We are very hungry now.

### 2. How to write about staying safe when you use technology.

كتبة الكتابة عن نفاذك ا هنا عندما تستخدم التكنولوجيا

### Example

#### How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We all use the internet every day. It is easy to use the internet. But when we are online, we need to be more careful. We need to follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information, like your telephone number. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell your parents or your teacher.



### **1 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

344

I am Sameer and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer, too. My friend Hady is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone but it is in my bag. We don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Hamdy has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger. And he's got a new MP3 player. It's small and brown. Can you see it?

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the best title for this text?  
.....
2. Do you think it is important to use computers at school? Why/ Why not?  
.....
3. What are the means of technology mentioned in the passage?  
.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the  
a) MP3 player    b) printer    c) mobile    d) charger

5. Hamdy is .....  
a) a teacher    b) a student    c) a classmate    d) Hady's friend

6. You can listen to music using a/an .....  
a) printer    b) MP3 player    c) mouse    d) picture

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always eat salad ..... lunchtime.  
a) on      b) at      c) of      d) to

2. I like watching trees and birds. I like ... .  
a) water      b) hobbies      c) sports      d) nature

3. This ..... gives me a lot of information about animals.  
a) screen      b) website  
c) mouse      d) charger

4. The teacher always ..... us some advice at the end of the lesson.  
a) gives      b) follows      c) takes      d) makes

**5.** Don't ..... litter in the river. We drink from it.  
 a) follow      b) drop      c) take      d) mime

**6.** At break, students shouldn't ..... in the class.  
 a) use      b) bring      c) stay      d) leave

**7.** It is always very ..... in summer.  
 a. hot      b) cold      c) rainy      d) snowy

**8.** Manal's father is not ..... today.  
 a) works      b) working      c) work      d) worked

**9.** They aren't sleeping, but they ..... their tablets.  
 a) use      b) using      c) are using      d) aren't using

**10.** What's your mother ..... ?  
 a) doing      b) do      c) did      d) does

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. No, they are watching TV. They're playing football. ( )

2. What are you read online? ( )

3. My dad is at home. He is working today. ( )

4. Sally is playing chess online? ( )

**4** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"What your family are doing now"

 Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجانب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**1** Everyone should ..... a hobby to do.  
 a) do      b) have      c) make      d) give

**2** Sally ..... her tablet and sending photos to her friends.  
 a) uses      b) using      c) used      d) is using

**3** They ..... taking selfies.  
 a) always have      b) have always      c) are always      d) always are



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

boil (ed) (v)	يغلي	password (n)	كلمة المرور/السر
colourful (adj)	زاهي اللون/هلون	personal information	معلومات شخصية
instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	tea bag (n)	كيس شاي
kettle (n)	غلاية	telephone number	رقم التليفون

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Language Expressions

answer > a call	يرد على مكالمة	make > friends with	يكون صدقة مع
come > home	يأتي إلى البيت	tea	يعمل شاي
keep > secret	يحافظ على سرية	say > hello	يقول أهلاً
look > interesting	يبدو شيئاً	stay > safe	يبقى أميناً

### العبارات اللعوبة

### Prepositions

a cup of tea	فنجان شاي	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع الكتروني
agree with	يتتفق مع	take out	يخرج
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	turn on	يشغل (جهاز)
example of	مثال لـ	worried about	قلق على

### حروف الحر

### Choose and complete:

1 Girls like to wear clothes.

2 I usually ask my teacher help.

3 It's important to safe online

stay - to - colourful - for

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والعبارات اللعوبة  
وتعريف الحر



### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
drink	drank	drunk
keep	kept	kept

### تصريف ال\_verbs غير المنتظم

## Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعکسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يُوافِق	disagree	لا يُوافِق
popular	محبوب/شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
worried	قلق	calm	هدئ

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات النحوية جيداً لأنها موضع لستة امتحانية.



### 1 stop + v + ing

يتوقف عن فعل شيء

Stop **playing** on your phone and listen to me.

### 2 Why don't you + inf. ....?

لم لا....؟ (تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح).

- Why don't you **use** an MP3 player?

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء اثري للدراسة وفهم وليس للحفظ.



### Definitions

التعريفات

password	كلمة السر	a word or numbers you use to go onto a website	(1) شئون
secret	سر	something you do not want to tell people about	(2) بحير

### Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفتها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفتها
agree	يُوافِق	accept	يقبل
popular	محبوب/شائع	famous	مشهور

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	نوعيتها	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
colour (n)	لون	-ful				colourful (adj)	ملون
person (n)	شخص	-al				personal (adj)	شخصي

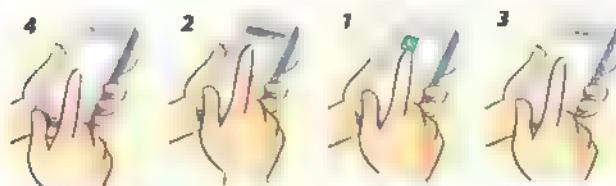
## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-reading question:** - Are you good at using technology?

**Read the instructions and put the pictures in the correct order.**

**Learn more**

**SB page 41**



### How to send a text message:

- First, tap the messages icon.
- Write your text message.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Then tap the SEND icon.

### 2. Complete the text:

#### How to make a video call:

- Turn your tablet on.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!



**Post-reading question:** - How can you send an email?

**Learn more**

**Work in pairs. Complete the table with this advice. Can you add any sentences?**

**SB page 42**

### Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep<sup>(1)</sup> your password<sup>(2)</sup> secret<sup>(3)</sup>.
- Make friends with people you don't know online.
- Tell people your personal information<sup>(1)</sup>  
(e.g. telephone number<sup>(2)</sup>).
- Send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a parent or teacher.
- Answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something.



(1) <b>كلمة سر</b>
(2) <b>سر</b>
(3) <b>معلومات شخصية</b>
(4) <b>رقم الهاتف</b>

#### Do (✓)

- Keep your password secret.

#### Don't (✗)

- Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying – Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practisemore



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to stay ..... online.  
a) safe      b) worried      c) angry      d) save
2. " ..... " is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.  
a) Keyword      b) Crossword      c) Password      d) Secret
3. Write the ..... for how to make a cup of tea.  
a) information      b) messages      c) icons      d) instructions
4. Don't ..... a phone call from someone you don't know.  
a) ask      b) reply      c) answer      d) write
5. To make a video call, ..... your tablet on.  
a) turn      b) look      c) come      d) keep
6. We use the ..... to make water hot.  
a) cattle      b) kite      c) can      d) kettle
7. Please keep it ..... I don't want anyone to know about my plan.  
a) secret      b) secretary      c) quite      d) away
8. Don't tell anyone about your ..... information on the internet.  
a) personally      b) personality      c) personal      d) person
9. Children shouldn't make friends ..... people they don't know.  
a) for      b) with      c) at      d) of
10. If you have a problem, ..... for help from a parent or teacher.  
a) ask      b) say      c) stay      d) keep
11. My mother is always worried ..... me when I'm late outside.  
a) on      b) at      c) for      d) about
12. We ..... water when we want to make tea.  
a) stay      b) say      c) boil      d) answer
13. Most children like to wear ..... clothes.  
a) bad      b) unpopular      c) dangerous      d) colourful

**C****Language****Imperative****Affirmative**

الإثبات

- تبدأ صيغة الأمر في الإثبات بالفعل في المصدر أو Always + inf. بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- Go to the shop.
- Open the door, please. / Please, open the door.
- Always follow school rules.
- Nelly, tidy your room, please.

**Negative**

النفي

- وتبدأ صيغة الأمر في النفي بـ Don't ثم الفعل في المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- Don't go to the shop.
- Don't open the door, please. / Please, don't open the door.
- Never come to school late.
- Don't speak loudly, Omar.

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

**1** Following your school rules, Basmala. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Follow) لأنها صيغة أمر و هي تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.

**2** Didn't talk during the lesson. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Don't) لأنها صيغة أمر منفي.

**3** Ali, brings some water, please. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (bring) لأن Ali هنا مخاطب، وبعددها فعل أمر يبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practice more



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. .... on your tablet to make a video call. F - FP dialogue  
a) Turns      b) Turn      c) Turning      d) Turned

2. .... shout. My father is asleep. F - FP dialogues  
a) Don't      b) Not      c) Do      d) Often

3. To send a text message, ..... the SEND icon. F - FP dialogues  
a) tap      b) tapping      c) tapped      d) to tap

4. .... photos to people you don't know. F - FP dialogues  
a) Send      b) Don't send      c) Didn't send      d) Sending

5. Lara, ..... your password secret. F - FP dialogues  
a) kept      b) keeping      c) keep      d) keeps

6. Use technology and ..... safe online. F - FP dialogues  
a) to stay      b) staying      c) stayed      d) stay

7. Don't ..... a phone call from someone you don't know. F - FP dialogues  
a) answer      b) answering      c) answers      d) answered

8. ..... a few minutes preparing yourself for exercises. F - FP dialogues  
a) Spends      b) Spend      c) Spending      d) Spent

9. First, ..... some water in a kettle. F - FP dialogues  
a) putting      b) to putting      c) to put      d) put

10. .... write on your desk, keep it clean. F - FP dialogues  
a) Didn't      b) Doesn't      c) Never      d) Can't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. Don't eating when you use a computer. ( ) F - FP dialogue

2. Taking out the tea bag. ( ) F - FP dialogue

3. Boils the water, Nada. ( ) F - FP dialogue

4. Tamer! Didn't leave your toys here. ( ) F - FP dialogue

5. Make noise in the library. ( ) F - FP dialogue

6. Don't been rude to other people. ( ) F - FP dialogue

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 4 Lessons (5 & 6)

15.5

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sherief is asking Lamiaa about Reem, Sara and Aya.

Sherief : What are Reem and Sara doing?

Lamiaa : (1).....

Sherief : Again! They are always taking selfies. (2).....?

Lamiaa : Aya is listening to her MP3 player.

Sherief : Do you like taking selfies, Lamiaa?

Lamiaa : (3).....

Sherief : (4).....?

Lamiaa : Because my phone camera isn't good.

Sherief : Can we take a selfie together with my phone?

Lamiaa : (5).....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, ..... the TV on to watch the new film.

a) make      b) keep      c) turn      d) stay

2. You should keep your ..... secret.

a) sport      b) food  
c) friends      d) password

3. It is good to ..... new friends.

a) make      b) do      c) stay      d) spend

4. Our English book ..... interesting, so lots of people use it.

a) takes      b) makes      c) looks      d) asks

5. Stay safe when you use .....

a) puzzle      b) password      c) technology      d) secret

6. We use the kettle to ..... water.

a) keep      b) stay      c) look      d) boil

7. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know.

a) talk      b) write      c) send      d) click

8. He ..... a story now.

a) read      b) reads      c) has read      d) is reading

9. Look! the car is ..... very fast.

a) moves      b) moving      c) move      d) moved

10. ..... your hands before eating.

a) Wash      b) Washing      c) To wash      d) Washed

**D** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Do your parents sitting under the tree? (.....)
2. There are some juice in the bottle. (.....)
3. Don't to use your phone in class. (.....)
4. Sally, writes your name on your book. (.....)

**E** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"How to stay safe online"**



**Challenging Questions**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مُجَاب عَنْهُ فِي نَهايَةِ الْكِتَاب

1 When the mobile rings, I like to ..... the call.

a) send      b) write      c) answer      d) make

2 Stay safe ..... you use technology.

a) when      b) which      c) how      d) why

3 Toka, ..... come to school late.

a) doesn't      b) don't      c) isn't      d) can't

# Review

on Unit



## Language

### Vocabulary

3D printer	جهاز الطابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	There is/There are:
personal information	بياناتي الشخصية	<b>Affirmative</b>
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف	<b>There is a printer.</b>
popular	مُحبّ	<b>There are some boys here.</b>
click on the icon	الضغط على أيقونة	<b>Negative</b>
instructions	التعليمات	<b>There isn't a charger.</b>
school uniform	الزي المدرسي	<b>There aren't any tablets.</b>
keep ... secret	حفظ ... سر	<b>Questions</b>
kettle	كettle	<b>Is there an MP3 player?</b>
send a text message	إرسال رسالة نصية	<b>Are there any mobile phones?</b>
stay safe	ابق آمناً	<b>The present continuous:</b>
take a selfie	التقط صورة سيلفي	<b>Affirmative</b>
make a video call	الاتصال بالفيديو	<b>She is writing an email now.</b>
tap on the icon	لمس أيقونة	<b>I'm doing my homework.</b>
mobile phone	جهاز المحمولة	<b>Negative</b>
mouse	المouse	<b>They aren't studying.</b>
technology	التكنولوجيا	<b>I'm not eating now.</b>
MP3 player	جهاز ام بي تري	<b>Questions</b>
nature	الطبيعة	<b>What are you doing now?</b>
whiteboard	اللوح白板	<b>Is Ali watching TV now?</b>
password	كلمة المرور / السر	<b>Imperative:</b>
write an email	رسالة بريد إلكتروني	<b>Go to the shop.</b>

### Skills

Ask and answer questions about your friend:

**A:** Are you sitting next to your best friend?

- B: Yes, I am.

**A:** Is she writing with a pen or pencil?

- B: She is writing with a pencil.

**A:** What are they doing?

- B: They are watching TV.

**Questions**

**Is Ali watching TV now?**

**Imperative:**

**Go to the shop.**

**Huda, boil that water.**

**Negative**

**Don't boil that water, Huda.**

**Please, don't open the door.**



## Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Rana likes ..... من الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب  
 a) biology      b) technology      c) science      d) maths

2. She likes playing .....  
 a) video games      b) basketball      c) tennis      d) football

3. Rana plays on her .....  
 a) laptop      b) tablet      c) TV      d) computer

4. Her favourite subject is .....  
 a) English      b) maths      c) social studies      d) computer studies.



## Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Salwa** is telling Nada that she is going to the library.

Nada : Hello, Salwa. Where are you going?

Salwa : Hello, Nada. (1)

Nada : (2) .....

Salwa : I'm going to the library to read a story. What about you?

Nada : (3) .....

Salwa : Why are you going to the club?

Nada : I'm going to the club to play basketball.

Salwa : (4) .....

Nada : Yes, I'm in the school basketball team. Do you want to come with me?

Salwa : (5) .....



## Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do researches and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g., telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What should you do when you are in trouble?
2. What is the main idea of the passage?
3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. You should keep your ..... secret.  
a) text      b) email      c) poster      d) password
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..  
a) telephone      b) instructions  
c) technology      d) call
6. The underlined word "**parent**" means .....  
a) mum or dad      b) uncle  
c) teacher      d) mum's sister

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I will send you a/an ..... message soon.  
a) text      b) test      c) photo      d) icon
2. A ..... is a small computer that you carry around.  
a) mouse      b) mobile      c) laptop      d) charger
3. ..... the icon on your mobile phone.  
a) Click      b) Tap      c) Look      d) Make
4. Young people like to ..... a selfie with their smart phones.  
a) print      b) keep      c) take      d) make
5. My little brother loves ..... , so he spends a lot of time in the garden.  
a) nature      b) future      c) furniture      d) culture

6. I can boil water in the ..... to make tea.

a) laptop      b) kettle      c) charger      d) radio

7. The opposite of the word "safe" is ".....".

a) false      b) different      c) dangerous      d) depressed

8. She would like ..... video games.

a) play      b) to play      c) playing      d) played

9. Ahmed is ..... a text message to his father.

a) send      b) sends      c) sent      d) sending

10. ..... too much TV!

a) Watch      b) Not watch      c) Watching      d) Don't watch

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. First, putting some water in a kettle. (.....) ت - ت پ آجمنال

2. Ali, didn't go out. It's raining outside. (.....)

3. What she is cooking now? (.....)

4. Can I have any water? (.....) ت - ت م ا، دکسواں



## Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Technology makes our life easy"**



Assess your  
progress



Study again

64%

Practise more

84%

Solve more exercises

100%

Well done!



## November Model



- 15 -

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Ali** is asking Amr about his favourite sports star.

**Ali** : Who is your favourite sports star?

**Amr** : (1) .....

**Ali** : What sport does Mohamed Salah play?

**Amr** : (2) .....

**Ali** : (3) ..... ?

**Amr** : He plays for Liverpool Team.

**Ali** : (4) .....

**Amr** : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

**Ali** : Do you want to be like him?

**Amr** : (5) .....

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A plane is very ..... It can go at 900 km/h.

a) tall      b) long      c) weak      d) fast

2. Alice is the main ..... of the story.

a) crater      b) character      c) adventure      d) book

3. My cousin's hair is not straight. It is .....

a) blond      b) short      c) long      d) curly

4. You can ..... your mobile using a phone charger.

a) charge      b) change      c) hear      d) choose

5. You must keep your password .....

a) easy      b) famous      c) secret      d) known

6. You can ..... a video call to your brother in Dubai.

a) do      b) make      c) send      d) write

7. His father has got a white long ..... on his face.

a) bread      b) board      c) beard      d) broad

8. ..... there a mouse next to the laptop?

a) Is      b) Has      c) Are      d) Does

9. Hamza ..... got curly hair.

a) is      b) have      c) was      d) has

10. At the moment, students ..... to a story.

a) listened      b) are listening      c) listens      d) listen

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. My brother is read a book at the moment. ( \_\_\_\_\_ )

2. I was sitting in a cafe now. ( \_\_\_\_\_ )

3. Didn't talk to strangers. ( \_\_\_\_\_ )

4. A: Are there a tablet in your classroom? B: Yes, there is. ( \_\_\_\_\_ )

5. What is Adel do at the moment? ( \_\_\_\_\_ )

Part 2 Final Revision

قم بمراجعة  
أهم المفردات  
والقواعد اللغوية  
والمهارات وحل  
المزيد من الأسئلة  
الخاصة بالوحدتين  
الثالثة والرابعة عن  
طريق الذهاب لجرء  
المراجعة الشهرية  
بملحق التقويم.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need paper for the .....  
 a) camera      b) screen      c) printer      d) mouse
2. The lion is a ..... animal.  
 a) kind      b) scary      c) friendly      d) worry
3. My little daughter has got a big .....  
 a) smell      b) smile      c) small      d) smelt
4. My grandfather has got a big ..... on his mouth.  
 a) beard      b) hair      c) moustache      d) eye
5. It's important to stay ..... online.  
 a) safe      b) worried      c) angry      d) colourful
6. You can ..... a selfie on your mobile.  
 a) help      b) make      c) run      d) take
7. ..... video games is my favourite hobby.  
 a) Giving      b) Playing      c) Doing      d) Making
8. ..... throw rubbish in the street.  
 a) Never      b) Doesn't      c) Didn't      d) Aren't
9. A: Can you phone me at 6:00 pm? B: No, I .....  
 a) can      b) doesn't      c) can't      d) didn't
10. My best friend ..... short, dark hair.  
 a) has got      b) have got      c) got      d) is

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali have got lots of books. ( )
2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair. ( )
3. Ola is write a paragraph at the moment. ( )
4. There isn't some cheese. ( )
5. Where can we meeting today? ( )

**1** Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Amir about using technology in his school.

Ahmed : Do you use technology at your school?

Amir : (1) ..... We use tablets.

Ahmed : Really! Can you use a tablet?

Amir : (2) .....

Ahmed : (3) .....

Amir : We use tablets in all subjects.

Ahmed : (4) .....

Amir : Yes, my classroom has got a smart board.

Ahmed : Do you use mobile phones at class?

Amir : (5) ..... We can't use them.

**2** Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. He hasn't got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What's the best title for the passage?

2. Who does Salah talk to?

3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Mohamed Salah gives money to  people.

- a) poor
- b) rich
- c) clean
- d) happy

**5. "Fast" is the opposite of \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a) short
- b) weak
- c) slow
- d) friendly

6. Mohamed Salah has got ..... hair.

- a) curly
- b) white
- c) straight
- d) blond

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

**1. Keeps your password secret.** (.....)

2. There aren't some books. (.....)

3. Does she like watch TV? (.....)

4. Has your father get a beard? (.....)

**4** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

## "Your favourite sports star"



## Unit 5

# Holidays

### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** A description of a holiday; an advertisement for learning English

Learn more



**Writing** An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday

**Listening** A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about a day out

**Speaking** Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to news

**Language** The past simple

**Values** Respect

**Issues** Environmental awareness

# STUDY



## Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 102 & 103

قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الاتقان حيث إنها موضع استلة امتحانية.

قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهب لمحة التقويم ونسميم الكلمات الخاتمة بالدرس.

### A Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

			المفردات الرئيسية
bat (n)	خفاف	make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
cave (n)	كهف	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلًا	river (n)	نهر
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	see a camel	برى جملًا
desert (n)	صحراء	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
forest (n)	غابة	swim in the lake	يسباح في البحيرة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	visit a family	يزور أسرة
jungle (n)	ادغال/غابة كثيفة الأشجار	waterfall (n)	شلال

#### Additional Vocabulary

		المفردات الإضافية
dark (adj)	مظلم	متحف
echo (n)	صدى الصوت	اختبار مصفر
fantastic (adj)	رائع	دور
hotel (n)	فندق	دافئ
map (n)	خريطة	طقس

#### Prepositions

		حروف الجر
a place with	مكان به	على الشاطئ/البلاد
call out	بنادي	يركب جملًا
frightened of	خائف من	يبحث عن
in the rocks	في الصخور	يفكر في

Choose and complete: **with – warm – hotel – mountains**

1 The weather is **warm** today.  
 2 Climbing **mountains** is a dangerous sport.  
 3 The beach is a place **with** a lot of sand and water.

يمهد هذا  
التدريب لقياس  
فهمك لمفردات  
الرئيسية والإضافية  
وحوروف الجر

Check Point

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition | **لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية**  
 (v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الامعما عب المبنيطة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.	
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten	يركب	rode	ridden
have/has	يملك/لديه	had	had	يرى	saw	seen
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	ينتظر	spoke	spoken

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
get into/in	يدخل في	go out of	يخرج من
quiet	هدئ	noisy	صاخب

## Language Notes

ادرس العلاجات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موقم استثناء افتراضية.

### 1 called is called

التي تسمى/ الذي يسمى  
يسمى

We visited a city called Marrakesh.

My friend is called Mohammed.

### 2 would ('d) like to + inf.

يود أن

Where would you like to go?

I'd like to go to the beach.

### 3 when

عندما (الوقت)

When I was eight, I went to Siwa.

### 4 where

حيث (المكان)

A forest is a place where there are lots of trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'd like ..... Al Azhar Park in Cairo.  
 a) visit      b) visiting      c) to visit      d) to visiting

2 My teacher ..... Mohammed is from Giza.  
 a) calling      b) called      c) is called      d) calls

3 We will visit the village ..... my grandfather was born.  
 a) which      b) that      c) where      d) when

Check Point

# Vocabulary - Builder

جزء ابراهيم للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



## Countries/ Cities/ Places

## بلاد/ مدن/ أماكن

Al Azhar Park	حدائق الأزهر	Marrakesh	مدينة مراكش ( بالمغرب )
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Morocco	دولة المغرب
Egypt	مصر	Siwa	واحة سيوة
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى

## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفتها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفتها
get into	يدخل في	enter	يدخل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
fantastic	مدهش	amazing	مدهش

## Suffix اللاحقة

الكلمة الجديدة The new word

الكلمة سuffix Function تحول الفعل لصفة خالق

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.
desert	صحراء	dessert	حلوى	
quiet	هدوء	quite	إلى حد ما	
hear	يسمع	here	هنا	
bat	خفاف	boat	قارب	

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-listening question:

- A place with a lot of sand but no water. What is it?

Lesson 1

Listen to Taha and his sister playing a game. Can you guess the places?

SB page 45

Taha Guess<sup>(1)</sup> where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.



Sara Are there monkeys in the trees?



Taha No. It's very dark and quiet.



Sara Are you in a forest<sup>(2)</sup>?

Taha Yes, I am!

Sara My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand<sup>(3)</sup>.

Taha I know! You're in the desert<sup>(4)</sup>.

Sara No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.

Taha You're on the beach<sup>(5)</sup>!

(1) بحث

Sara That's right.

(2) غابة / أشجار

Taha Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. Listen. (calls out with echo)

(3) رمال

Hello! (echo comes twice)

(4) الصحراء

Sara That's easy. You're in a cave<sup>(6)</sup>! Can you see any bats<sup>(7)</sup>?

(5) الشاطئ

Taha No, I can't. It's very dark in here!

(6) كعده

(7) حفليش



### Note:

تعلم كيمية بطق الكلمات التالية:

desert /dezərt/   cave /keɪv/   echo /ekəʊ/

### Post-listening question:

- Have you ever been in a cave? If yes, how did you feel?

## Pre-reading question:

- How was your last summer holiday?

Look and read. Match the photos with the descriptions:

SB page 46

### My holiday photos

1.  Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle<sup>(1)</sup>. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave<sup>(2)</sup>, because she was frightened!



يَعْمَلُ قَلْصِيلٌ (1)

يَدْخُلُ الْكَهْفَ (2)

يَقْوِمُ سَرْهَةً دَلْوَبَةً (3)

يَتَسَلَّهُ جَنَدٌ (4)

يَلْمُ فَيْ حَرْبَةً (5)

2.  In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic<sup>(3)</sup> in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.



3.  When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain<sup>(4)</sup>. We saw camels and slept in a tent<sup>(5)</sup> in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!



#### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية.

sandcastle /'sænd ka:səl/

frightened /fraitənd/

delicious /dɪlɪʃəs/

#### Post-reading questions:

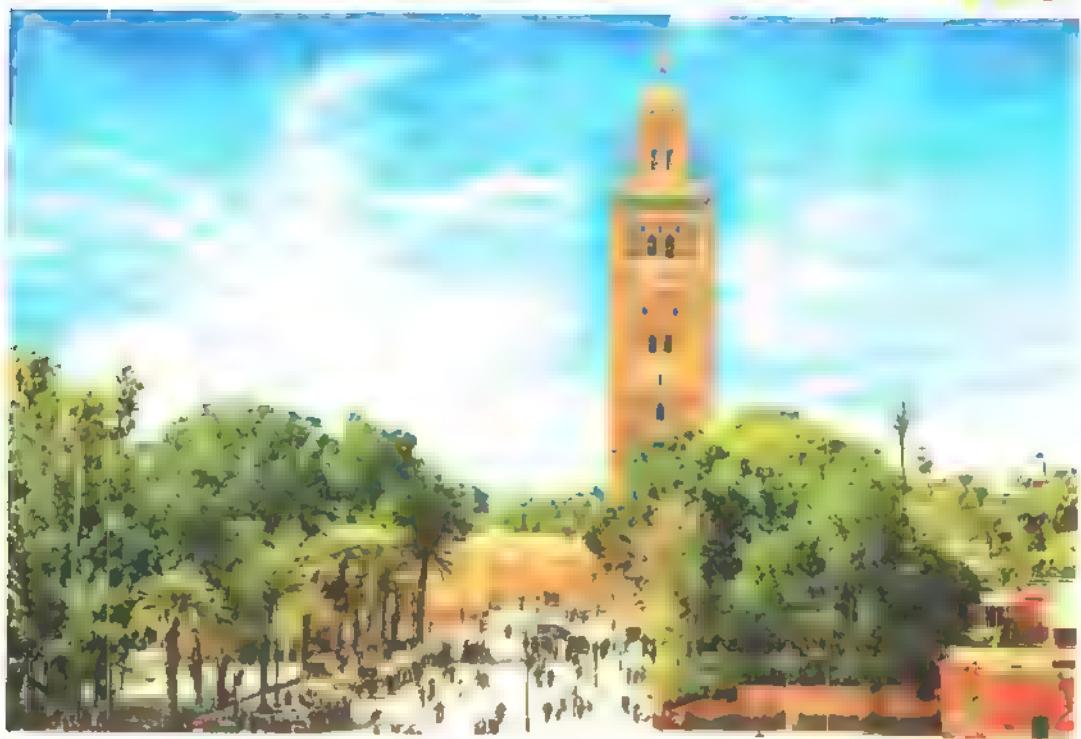
- 1 When did they visit their uncle?
- 2 What activities did they do at Siwa?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Where did you go last summer?

Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 103



**Hi Eman,**

Last summer, my family **had** a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We **visited** a big beach and then we **slept** in a nice hotel. We **didn't swim** in the sea. It **wasn't** very warm! But I **rode** on a camel. That **was** fun. We **visited** a city called Marrakesh, too, and we **went** to a museum. We also **ate** some delicious food.

**Write soon.**

**Hana**

**Post-reading question:**

- What's this email about?

**Note:**

تعلم كيفية بث الكلمات التالية:

Morocco /ma'rokəʊ/

Marrakesh /mə'rækəʃ/

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is very high and there's lots of water in it.  
a) beach      b) cave      c) lake      d) waterfall
2. " ..... " is a place inside the mountain.  
a) Cave      b) River      c) Lake      d) Waterfall
3. The ..... is my favourite place to go in summer to swim.  
a) cave      b) mountain      c) beach      d) desert
4. Children like to build ..... on the beach.  
a) mountains      b) lakes      c) waterfalls      d) sandcastles
5. A ..... is a tropical forest with lots of trees and plants.  
a) desert      b) waterfall      c) cave      d) jungle
6. People don't like to go ..... caves because they are dark.  
a) out of      b) by      c) for      d) into
7. We usually ..... a picnic at the weekend.  
a) swim      b) find      c) have      d) make
8. Most children like playing ..... the beach.  
a) of      b) for      c) on      d) to
9. Last summer, the ..... was very hot.  
a) sandcastle      b) weather      c) picnic      d) game
10. Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was .....!  
a) frightened      b) delicious      c) dark      d) quiet
11. We sleep in tents when we go to the .....  
a) villa      b) hotel      c) flat      d) desert
12. We had an English ..... every Sunday, so I have to study hard every day.  
a) quiz      b) camp      c) taste      d) ride
13. Boys like to ..... their bikes on holidays.  
a) ride      b) build      c) see      d) make

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother makes ..... food. We all like it.

٢٠٢٣ الدليل

a) bad      b) delicious      c) unknown      d) sad

2. When we went camping, my brother ..... a very high mountain.

٢٠٢٣ سكدرية

a) climbed      b) chopped      c) rode      d) bought

3. We went camping in the desert and slept in a ..... there.

٢٠٢٣ مقطم

a) tent      b) lake      c) river      d) kitchen

4. There are a lot of trees in the .....

٢٠٢٣ الشرقية

a) jug      b) sky      c) jungle      d) weather

5. There isn't any water in the .....

٢٠٢٣ سقعا

a) river      b) desert      c) lake      d) sea

6. Our garden is a good place ..... a lot of trees.

٢٠٢٣ الشرقية

a) with      b) for      c) by      d) to

7. A ..... is a small animal like a mouse with wings that flies around at night.

٢٠٢٣ سقعا

a) boat      b) bat      c) bait      d) bite

8. It's very ..... and quiet in the forest. I can't see anything.

٢٠٢٣ مقطم

a) tasty      b) delicious      c) safe      d) dark

9. I saw some boys swimming in the .....

٢٠٢٣ سقعا

a) mountain      b) forest      c) lake      d) desert

10. Many people like to ..... on camels.

٢٠٢٣ سقعا

a) ride      b) drive      c) climb      d) swim

11. It was my favourite holiday! It was .....

٢٠٢٣ سقعا

a) dark      b) fantastic      c) terrible      d) bad

12. I'm trying to find the park on the .....

٢٠٢٣ سقعا

a) picnic      b) map      c) desert      d) cave

لحل المريض من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسرين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة ملخص





### Usage

### الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.
- نستخدم زمن الماضي السimple لتحدث عن فعل حدث في الماضي وانتهى أو حدثين متتابعين في الماضي.
- I visited my uncle yesterday.

#### 1 Verb "to be":

I He She It	<b>was</b>	frightened. hungry. a nurse. big.	Affirmative الإثبات	We You They	<b>were</b>	early. at school. quiet.
I He She It	<b>wasn't</b>	sad. thirsty. a teacher. small.	Negative النفي	We You They	<b>weren't</b>	late. at home. noisy.
<b>wasn't = was not</b>				<b>weren't = were not</b>		

#### Yes/No Questions:

السؤال بمعنى هل :

+ Affirmative	<b>They were happy.</b>	<b>She was frightened.</b>
' Question	<b>Were they happy?</b>	<b>Was she frightened?</b>



Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 There are a lot of people on the beach last holiday. ( )

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) موجود (last) وهو تدل على الماضي.

2 Ali didn't at the park last Monday. ( )

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't) لأنها لا يوجد فعل في المصدر.

## Regular & Irregular verbs:

### Affirmative

الإيجات

التصريف الثاني للمفعول +

- I **arrived** late for school.

تقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

1

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة  
 تكونون بإضافة (d/ ed/ ied) لل مصدر:

live	•	lived
visit	•	visited
study	•	studied

2

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة  
 يتغير فيها شكل المفعول وليس لها قاعدة محددة:

eat	ate
buy	bought
take	took

### Key words

- فن العاضي - منذ ago ... - العاض ... last - امس yesterday -

( سنة في العاض )

- I **bought** this car

- We **visited** Luxor 2 years

### Negative

النفي

نضم (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

Subject ▶ did not (didn't) + inf. + ....

- You didn't **buy** a new notebook.

### Got it ? -

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 She don't go to school yesterday.

( ..... )

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't) لوجود كلمة (yesterday) الدالة على العاضي البسيط.

2 I watched a scary movie next weekend.

( ..... )

- الإجابة الصحيحة (last) لأن فعل الجملة (watched) فن العاضي.

3 Salma didn't visited her aunt last Friday.

( ..... )

- الإجابة الصحيحة (visit) لأن (didn't) يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. I ..... to Aswan last winter.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) went      b) go      c) goes      d) going

2. ..... your friends ready for the exam last week?

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) Do      b) Did      c) Does      d) Were

3. Yesterday, we didn't ..... our lessons.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) studied      b) study      c) studying      d) studies

4. Mona ..... to school yesterday because she was ill.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) not come      b) doesn't come      c) don't come      d) didn't come

5. We camped in the forest and ..... in a tent.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) sleep      b) sleeps      c) slept      d) sleeping

6. When I ..... eight, we went to Siwa.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) was      b) am      c) is      d) are

7. We ..... swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) aren't      b) weren't      c) didn't      d) don't

8. Sally ..... happy at the party yesterday.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) has      b) is      c) was      d) were

9. My grandmother ..... a nurse. She was a doctor.

٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

a) wasn't      b) didn't      c) isn't      d) hasn't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. He visit his friends yesterday. ( ) ٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

2. Suzy doesn't like swimming when she was young. ( ) ٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

3. They travelled by car. They walked. ( ) ٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

4. I rode on a camel. That is fun. ( ) ٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

5. Rana and Mayada didn't at school yesterday. ( ) ٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

6. They didn't climbed the tree. ( ) ٢٠١٩ مهر لـ

## Time to Practise



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. Last week, we ..... them some presents. ٢٠٢٢ النحو

a) give      b) gives      c) gave      d) giving

2. He didn't ..... the prize last week. ٢٠٢٣ الفعل

a) win      b) won      c) winning      d) wins

3. We ..... Port Said last year. ٢٠٢٤ الفعل

a) visit      b) visited      c) visiting      d) visits

4. He ..... at home last week. ٢٠٢٥ المفعول

a) were      b) had      c) was      d) is

5. She ..... in Alexandria when she was a little girl. ٢٠٢٦ المفعول

a) lives      b) lived      c) living      d) is living

6. Last summer, the weather ..... hot. ٢٠٢٧ الحالة

a) was      b) were      c) is      d) are

7. My family ..... a fantastic holiday in Morocco last summer. ٢٠٢٨ الحالة

a) are having      b) having      c) have      d) had

8. I ..... Pizza for dinner last night. ٢٠٢٩ الخبرة

a) eat      b) eating      c) ate      d) eaten

9. We ..... in the sea because it was too cold. ٢٠٣٠ المفعول

a) didn't swim      b) swam      c) don't swim      d) swim

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. They study for two hours last night. ( ) الاسم العامل

2. They don't visit their uncle a week ago. ( ) ٢٠٣١ المدحور

3. Ali didn't at school yesterday. ( ) ٢٠٣٢ الفعل

4. We went to the theatre next week. ( ) ٢٠٣٣ المفعول

5. Were you wear your jacket last night? ( ) ٢٠٣٤ المفعول

6. We played games and rides bikes. ( ) ٢٠٣٥ المفعول

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة از Quiz الخاص بكل درسرين من ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





## D Skills



### Write it right

#### How to write about your last weekend.

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان).
- I went with (الشخص / الأشخاص).
- We went by (الوسيلة).
- We (الأنشطة التي قمتم بها).
- We didn't (الأنشطة التي لم تقم بها).
- It was a fantastic holiday.

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة شكل حدد.

كيف تكتب عن عطلتك الأسبوعية الماضية



#### Writing tips

Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes.  
راجح الأخطاء الإملائية وأخطاء الفوائد في  
فقرتك.

### Example

#### Your last holiday

I like travelling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last holiday, I went to Hurghada. It's a beautiful city by the beach. There's a lot to do and see there. I went with my family. We went by bus. It is a beautiful place. We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We didn't see camels there. We ate delicious food, then we played games. My brother rode his bike. We left the place late at night. We enjoyed our time very much. It was a fantastic holiday.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

#### "Last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 5

Lessons  
(1 & 2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did Ragab travel to Aswan?
  - a) Last week.
  - b) Last month.
  - c) Last winter.
  - d) Last summer.
2. Who did Ragab travel with?
  - a) His friends.
  - b) His class.
  - c) His relatives.
  - d) His family.
3. How did Ragab travel?
  - a) By train.
  - b) By bus.
  - c) By car.
  - d) By plane.
4. What did Ragab buy from shops?
  - a) Tickets.
  - b) Souvenirs.
  - c) Food.
  - d) Fruit.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can hear my words again and again inside a ..... .
 

a) river	b) lake	c) forest	d) cave
----------	---------	-----------	---------
2. Can you sleep in a ..... in the desert?
 

a) villa	b) hotel	c) flat	d) tent
----------	----------	---------	---------
3. I ..... on a camel in the forest when we had a picnic there.
 

a) drove	b) rode	c) went	d) flew
----------	---------	---------	---------
4. I can't climb this ..... . It's very high.
 

a) forest	b) mountain	c) street	d) jungle
-----------	-------------	-----------	-----------
5. You can enjoy sitting on the ..... by the sea.
 

a) jungle	b) beach	c) mountain	d) river
-----------	----------	-------------	----------
6. There's a lot of ..... in the desert.
 

a) sand	b) castles	c) water	d) plants
---------	------------	----------	-----------
7. A ..... is a place where water falls from a high place.
 

a) waterwheel	b) waterfall	c) lake	d) sea
---------------	--------------	---------	--------

8. She didn't ..... to the beach yesterday.

٢٠١٩ انگلیسی

a) goes      b) went      c) gone      d) go

9. .... you and your friends worried before the last exam?

a) Was      b) Are      c) Were      d) Did

10. When we arrived, it ..... very windy.

الانگلیسی ۲۰۱۹

a) is      b) was      c) be      d) were

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Mona went to the zoo next week.

( ..... ) کھر سندھ

2. Sara doesn't buy a camera yesterday.

( ..... )

3. When I am eight, I went to London.

( ..... )

4. I eat fish for lunch yesterday.

( ..... ) لسانی

**Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

الفصل ۲۰۱۹

**"A trip you made"**



**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجانب علم فہرست نہایت کتاب

(1) When I speak, I can hear my words again and again.

It's a/an .....

a) cave      b) echo      c) mountain      d) jungle

(2) It's not good to ..... your friends loudly in the street.

a) call out      b) search for      c) think of      d) swim in

(3) My uncle ..... Nabil is a doctor.

a) calls      b) calling      c) called      d) is called



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

camp (ed) (v)	يعسكن/يخيم	holiday flat (n)	شقة العطلة
castle (n)	قلعة	language school (n)	مدرسة لغات
climb up (ed) (v)	يصعد	student (n)	طالب
exciting (adj)	مثير	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
holiday courses (n)	دورات في فترة الإجازة	view (n)	منظر طبيعي

### المفردات الرئيسية

المفردات الإضافية			
dolphin (n)	دolphin	flag (n)	علم
enjoy (ed) (v)	بسنةنعم	wonderful (adj)	رائع

**Choose and complete:** wonderful - castle - souvenirs - student

1 I visited the  . It is very ancient.

2 We spent a   time in Alexandria last summer.

3 I bought some   from Khan El-Khalili.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
قياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية

### Cheat Point

### Language Expressions

do	>	a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	make	>	an advertisement	يقوم بعمل إعلان
		activities	يقوم بانشطة			a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
have	>	a holiday/time	يقضى إجازة/وقتًا	ride	>	a horse	يركب حصاناً

### العبارات اللغوية

## drof al-jar

### Prepositions

advertisement for	إعلان لـ	for a holiday	لقضاء عطلة
a ride on	رحلة علىـ	get to	يصل إلىـ
by the lake/beach	بجوار البحيرة/الشاطئ	go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة
find out	يكشف	in Arabic	باللغة العربية

### Check Point

Choose and complete: do – by – ride – for

- 1 We can . many activities in summer.
- 2 I read an advertisement a good job.
- 3 My father bought a new flat the beach.

بعد هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعابير اللغوية  
و دروس الدرس.

### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
learn	يتعلم	learnt
show	يعرض / يبين	shown

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

### Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
stay	يقيم	leave	ينترك / يغادر
wonderful	راهن	terrible	فظيع / سيء جداً

### الكلمات و عكسها

## Language - Notes

درس العلاقات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضوع اسئلة امتحانية.



Subject + first/last + past simple

أول / آخر مرة ...

When I first **came** to the language school, I was not very good at English.

I last **saw** my uncle three days ago.

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء اثبات للحراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



## Definitions

			التعريفات
camp	يخيم/يعسكر	sleep for a time in a tent <sup>(1)</sup>	ذمة (1)
castle	قلعة	a big, strong building <sup>(2)</sup> from the past	مهن (2)
dolphin	دولفين	a friendly sea animal	بندر (3)
holiday flat	شقة العطلة	a place to stay for a holiday	
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	something you buy to remember <sup>(3)</sup> a holiday	
view	منظر طبيعي	what you can see from a place	

## Places

England	إنجلترا	London	لondon
France	فرنسا	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Germany	ألمانيا	the London Eye	عجلة لندن (معلم سياحي)
Jordan	الأردن	Windsor Castle	قلعة وندسور

## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
interesting	شيق	exciting	مثير
wonderful	رائع	amazing/fantastic	مذهل/رائع

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
advertise (v)	يعلن	-ment		تحويل الفعل لاسم		advertisement (n)	إعلان
wonder (v)	يتعجب	-ful		تحويل الفعل لصفة		wonderful (adj)	رائع

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا الدرس يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في المعنى ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.
camp	عسكر	comp	منسق	
view	منظر طبيعي	review	مقال نقدى	
flat	شقة	flag	علم	

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-listening question:

- Where did you go last holiday?

### Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

Hatem Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday<sup>(1)</sup>?

Yunis Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks!

Hatem Where did you go?

Yunis I went to Jordan<sup>(2)</sup> by plane.

Hatem Wow! Did you visit your family there?

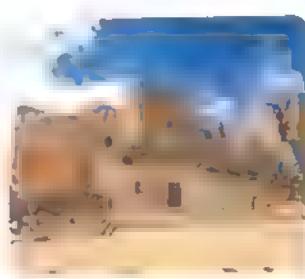
Yunis No, we stayed in a holiday flat<sup>(3)</sup> by the beach.

We had a wonderful view<sup>(4)</sup> from the windows.

Every morning, I saw dolphins<sup>(5)</sup> in the sea.

Hatem Did you swim in the sea?

Yunis Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a map and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old castle<sup>(6)</sup>. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.



Hatem How did you get to the castle?

Yunis We climbed up the mountain!



Hatem Did you buy any souvenirs?

Yunis Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir<sup>(7)</sup> for you.

Hatem Oh, how interesting! Egypt's flag<sup>(8)</sup> is also red, white and black.

Jordan's flag has another colour—green, too. Thanks, Yunis!

### Post-listening question:

Where would you like to go next holiday?



### Note:

تعلم كيفية بحث الكلمات السالبة -

castle /ko:səl/ souvenir /su:vəniər/

### Pre-reading question:

- What activities do you do on holiday?

Read the text quickly and answer the questions in pairs.

SB page 50



### Learn English in London!



- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- Holiday courses<sup>(1)</sup> are for one, two or three weeks.

- (1) دورات تدريبية
- (2) مدرسة لغات
- (3) قنطرة وندسور
- (4) ملكة
- (5) عطلة لندن
- (6) يستلمون



I had a wonderful time at the language school<sup>(2)</sup>! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries.

My favourite place was Windsor Castle<sup>(3)</sup>. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen<sup>(4)</sup>!



I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye<sup>(5)</sup>, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.



When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun, and for homework we did interesting projects. I enjoyed<sup>(6)</sup> speaking English!



### Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think Mona didn't see the Queen?
- 2 Why did Laura like the ride on the London Eye?
- 3 How were Jurgen's lessons?

Complete the email with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 105

Hi Ali,

Last summer, I **travelled** to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I **went** to a language school in Cairo. I **had** a wonderful time. I **was** there for two weeks. The people in Cairo **were** very friendly. Now, I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I **wasn't** very good at Arabic. But the teachers **helped** me, and the lessons **were** fun. Now, I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I **bought** lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I **enjoyed** the view of the city from the top. What did you do last summer?

**Write soon and tell me.**

**Andy, England**

## Project

- Work in groups. Find out which holiday activities people can do in Egypt. Make a list.

قم بالعمل في مجموعة. قم باكتشاف أنشطة الإجازة التي يمكن للناس ممارستها في مصر. قم بعمل قائمة.

Work in pairs. Make an advertisement for a holiday in Egypt

قم بالعمل الثنائي. قم بعمل إعلان عن إجازة في مصر.

1. Choose one activity you can do in Egypt.

اختر نشاطاً تستطيع فعله في مصر.

2. Design and write an online advertisement and add pictures.

صمم واترك إعلاناً وصورة عبر الإنترنت.

3. Show your advertisement to the class and talk about it.

اعرض إعلانك على الفصل وتتحدث عنه.

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a beautiful ..... of the river from the top.  
a) view      b) review      c) preview      d) viewing
2. I bought many ..... for my friends from Paris.  
a) souvenirs      b) caves      c) menu      d) hobbies
3. When we went camping, my brother ..... up a very high mountain.  
a) bought      b) chopped      c) rode      d) climbed
4. A dolphin is a friendly ..... animal.  
a) wild      b) land      c) sea      d) plant
5. I ..... a horse in the forest when we had a picnic there.  
a) drove      b) rode      c) went      d) flew
6. Children like ..... because they can play and enjoy themselves.  
a) holidays      b) courses      c) advertisements      d) flats
7. We went to Jordan and ..... in a nice hotel.  
a) lived      b) enjoyed      c) left      d) stayed
8. Tourists like to visit ..... places in a country.  
a) unfriendly      b) famous      c) bad      d) boring
9. We visited our uncle who lives ..... the beach in Alexandria.  
a) to      b) for      c) by      d) of
10. Our new flat is ..... . It's cool.  
a) wonderful      b) boring      c) bad      d) ugly
11. When we went to Jordan, we took a ..... to know every place there.  
a) course      b) flat      c) flag      d) map
12. We stay in a holiday ..... when we travel to Hurghada.  
a) activity      b) flat      c) course      d) mountain
13. Egypt's ..... is red, white and black.  
a) flat      b) mountain      c) flag      d) map

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a big, strong building from the past.  
a) castle      b) hotel      c) souvenir      d) desert
2. Most teachers ask us to ..... projects for homework.  
a) do      b) make      c) take      d) see
3. Which holiday ..... can people do in Egypt?  
a) activities      b) views      c) souvenirs      d) projects
4. Some slow learners take summer ..... to be good at school subjects.  
a) holidays      b) camps      c) views      d) courses
5. You can search for a job in ..... in newspapers.  
a) adventures      b) advertisements      c) flats      d) technology
6. I bought many ..... for my friends from Paris.  
a) souvenirs      b) caves      c) menu      d) hobbies
7. ..... should study their lessons well to be good at them.  
a) Courses      b) Visitors      c) Students      d) Parents
8. London is a/an ..... city. Lots of people like to visit it.  
a) boring      b) exciting      c) bad      d) ugly
9. He ..... a great time at Al Azhar Park.  
a) had      b) made      c) rode      d) did
10. Basmala is good at English because she goes to a/an ..... school.  
a) course      b) activity      c) language      d) subject
11. I decided to buy something to ..... that holiday.  
a) have      b) stay      c) remind      d) remember
12. My favourite activity was a ride ..... the London Eye.  
a) for      b) at      c) in      d) on

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخامس بكل درسين من ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## C Language

### The Past Simple Tense C

#### Question

السؤال

#### 1 Yes/No questions:

**Did + subject + inf. ...?**

- A: **Did** you **watch** TV last night?
- B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

**Was/Were + subject + ...?**

- A: **Was** he at the cinema last week?  
B: Yes, he was.                    B: No, he wasn't.
- A: **Were** they excited about the trip?  
B: Yes, they were.                B: No, they weren't.

#### 2 Wh- questions:

**Q. word (أداة استفهام) ▶ did + subject + inf. ...?**

- A: What time **did** you **go** to bed?  
B: I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

**Q. word (أداة استفهام) ▶ was/were + subject + ...?**

- A: Where **were** you yesterday?  
B: I was at the cinema with my friends.



عد السؤال عن الفاعل في الفاضي السببي لا يستخدم المعل المساعد (did) بل نستخدم الفاعل من الفعل الأساسي:

- Who helped you yesterday? - My mother helped me.



**Got it ? -**

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

**1** How did you travelled to Paris? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لوجود كلمة (did) التي ياتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر.

**2** Where does he last week? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود كلمة last الدالة على الفاضي وعدم وجود فعل في المصدر والفاعل مفرد

**3** Did you in London two days ago? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود كلمة ago الدالة على الفاضي وعدم وجود فعل في المصدر والفاعل جمع

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. Where did you go on holiday ..... summer?  
 a) last      b) next      c) least      d) the following

٢ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

2. A: When ..... she return to Cairo? B: Last Friday.  
 a) does      b) did      c) do      d) don't

٣ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

3. Who ..... Hassan see in the park last Tuesday?  
 a) does      b) did      c) has      d) have

٤ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

4. Did Hany ..... a mountain last year?  
 a) climbing      b) climb      c) climbed      d) climbs

٥ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

5. ..... you ready for the exam yesterday?  
 a) Do      b) Did      c) Was      d) Were

٦ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

6. How ..... your last holiday?  
 a) was      b) did      c) is      d) does

٧ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

7. A: Where did you go? B: I ..... to Jordon.  
 a) go      b) goes      c) going      d) went

٨ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

8. A: Did you watch TV? B: Yes, I .....  
 a) don't      b) do      c) didn't      d) did

٩ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

9. What did you ..... for dinner last night?  
 a) eat      b) ate      c) eats      d) eating

١٠ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

10. A: Did you visit your family there? B: No, we .....  
 a) did      b) was      c) didn't      d) wasn't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. Which musical instrument did you played? (.....)

٢ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

2. Who did you saw last Monday? (.....)

٣ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

3. Did you and your family staying in a hotel? (.....)

٤ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

4. Where do you go last week? (.....)

٥ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

5. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)

٦ - ٣٣ الْيَوْمِ الْجَارِ

6. Did you at Alexandria last week? (.....)



## D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق الطلب من حل نسخة المحادلة بشكل جيد.



### 1. Speaking

#### Asking and answering questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

##### Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

##### Response

جملة الرد

	Where did you go on holiday?	أين ذهبت في الإجازة؟
	I went to Alexandria.	ذهبت إلى الإسكندرية.
	Did you swim in the sea?	هل قمت بالسباحة في البحر؟
	Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.	نعم، ورأيت دولفينًا أيضًا وقمت بالسباحة معه.
	What food did you eat?	ما الطعام الذي أكلته؟
	I ate a lot of fish.	أكلت الكثير من السمك.

### Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

المعلم

#### Complete the following dialogue:

► Ahmed and Ibrahim are talking about the summer holiday he spent in Alexandria.

Ahmed : Did you go to Alexandria on holiday?

Ibrahim : Yes, I did.

Ahmed : (1)..... ?

Ibrahim : Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too.

Ahmed : (2)..... ?

Ibrahim : I ate fish.

Ahmed : Is fish cheap or expensive there?

Ibrahim : (3)

Ahmed : Did you have a good time there?

Ibrahim : (4)

Ahmed : When did you come back?

Ibrahim : (5).....



## 2. Write it right

### How to write about your summer holiday

- Last summer, the weather was (حالة الطقس).
- We went to (المكان).
- It's a/an (صف المكان) place.
- We stayed in a hotel. The hotel was near the beach.
- We went to the beach. (الأفعال التي قمت بها على الشاطئ)
- My sister/brother (الأشقاء الذين قاموا بها)
- We had a wonderful time there.

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تعميق الطلب من كتابة مفردة بشكل جيد

كيفية الكتابة عن إجازتك الصيفية



### Writing tips

Check your paragraph for spelling and grammar.

تحقق من القواعد اللغوية أو من عدم وجود أخطاء لغوية في مفرعتك.

### Example

#### What you did last summer

Last summer, the weather was very hot. Our father decided to take us to a nice place to have a wonderful time. We thought of lots of places, but we decided to go to Marsa Matrouh. It's a quiet and fantastic place. We stayed in a comfortable hotel. It was near the beach, so we didn't walk too long. We spent a good time on the beach. My little sister made a sandcastle. I swam in the sea whose water was very clean. My mother made us delicious food. My father and mother liked sitting on the beach. My sister and I played with a ball on the beach. We stayed for two weeks there. We enjoyed our time a lot.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"My summer holiday"



هذه التدريب عبارة عن نسخة ترجمة تحدي لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرس.

### Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I had a holiday course in English in the exciting city of London. I had a wonderful time at the language school. I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle, but I did not see the Queen. I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops were fantastic and I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. It was really a wonderful visit.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer go to London?
2. What is the best title for this text? .....
3. Do you think the writer enjoyed the visit? Why/ Why not?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer bought a lot of ..... from London's shops.  
a) castles      b) eyes      c) souvenirs      d) shops
5. The opposite of the underlined word "fantastic" is .....  
a) wonderful      b) amazing      c) exciting      d) terrible
6. The underlined word "there" refers to .....  
a) London      b) English      c) the Castle      d) holiday

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students ..... many activities at their schools.  
a) do      b) make      c) write      d) ride
2. I had a summer course and ..... English well.  
a) had      b) made      c) learnt      d) taught
3. Tourists buy ..... before they go back to their countries.  
a) views      b) dolphins      c) souvenirs      d) castles
4. I like English very much and I ..... speaking it.  
a) hate      b) enjoy      c) leave      d) stay
5. My children like to go ..... a holiday to Hurghada.  
a) on      b) in      c) at      d) about

6. I went to the desert and ..... a horse there.  
 a) did                    b) made                    c) rode                    d) climbed

7. A ..... is an old building from the past.  
 a) flag                    b) view                    c) souvenir                    d) castle

8. What did Nader ..... in his office yesterday?  
 a) found                    b) find                    c) finds                    d) finding

9. .... Sally at home last Friday?  
 a) Was                    b) Did                    c) Were                    d) Does

10. .... Ahmed and Sami play tennis yesterday?  
 a) Were                    b) Are                    c) Did                    d) Was

 **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. What did Younis see and did there? ( \_\_\_\_\_ )      ٢٠٢٣ الاسكندرية

2. Where did she last summer? ( \_\_\_\_\_ )      ٢٠٢٣ مكة

3. Where did Magdy spent the weekend? ( \_\_\_\_\_ )      ٢٠٢٣ ام القرى

4. Do you go on holiday last week? ( \_\_\_\_\_ )      ٢٠٢٣

 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"An English course in London"**



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجانب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 How did you ..... the castle?  
 a) walk                    b) arrive                    c) get to                    d) go

2 I have two friends from England. I talk to them ..... English.  
 a) in                    b) at                    c) by                    d) with

3 Who ..... with you yesterday?  
 a) goes                    b) didn't go                    c) go                    d) going

# STUDY



## Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 51 - 53 WB pages 106 - 108

### A Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

busy (adj)	مزدحم	postcard (n)	بطاقة بريدية
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	sign (n)	لامة
light (n)	ضوء/مصباح	snails (n)	قوائم
pass (ed) (v)	يمر/يجتاز	tourist (n)	سائح

#### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Additional Vocabulary

bath time (n)	وقت الاستحمام	response (n)	رد فعل/اسجابة
emotion (n)	شعور/عاطفة	theatre (n)	مسرح
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	ticket (n)	تذكرة
play (n)	مسرحيّة	tired (adj)	متعب/مرهق

#### المفردات الاصامية

#### Language Expressions

be > back	يعود/يرجع	go to > sleep	يذهب للنوم
do > a journey	يفوض برحلة	have > a view of	يلقي نظرة على
follow > rules	يتبع القواعد	time	لديه وقت

#### التعابيرات اللغوية

#### Prepositions

for a holiday	لقضاء إجازة	go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
for example	على سبيل المثال	in bed	في السرير
get on	يركب على	on the train	في القطار
go in water	ينزل في الماء	on TV	في التلفزيون

#### drof الجر

#### Choose and complete: for - theatre - light - tickets

1 We can see plays and shows at the theatre.

2 We can't enter the cinema without tickets.

3 My family went to Hurghada for a holiday.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لاختصار مفهوم  
المفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية ودروf  
الجر

#### Check Point

### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

	Present	Past simple	Past participle
draw	رسم	drew	drawn
fall	يقع/يسقط	fell	fallen
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left

### Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح
lose	يخسر	win	يفوز/يكسب

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء اضافي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



### Famous Places

Australia	أستراليا	the Louvre	متحف اللوفر
Canada	كندا	the Nile	النيل
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لوكسمبورج	the River Seine	نهر السين
Ramses Station	محطة رمسيس	the Science Museum	متحف العلوم
the Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل	the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك

### Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
closed	مغلق	locked	مغلق
pass	يمر/يجتاز	succeed	ينجح

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
tour (n)	جولة	-ist		تحول الاسم لاسم فاعل		tourist (n)	سائح
wind (n)	رياح	-y		تحول الاسم لصفة		windy (adj)	كثير الرياح

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### **Pre-listening question:**

- How was your last holiday?

Lesson 5

 Listen. What ate Mazin's ice cream?

SB page 51

**Man** What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

**Mazin** I went to the zoo.

**Man** Oh, that's interesting<sup>(1)</sup>! Did you enjoy the day?

**Mazin** No, I didn't.

**Man** Oh, dear<sup>(2)</sup>. Why not?

**Mario** Well, first we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.

**Man** What a pity<sup>(3)</sup>! So you didn't see them?

**Mazin** No, we didn't. Then, we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

**Man** What did you do next?

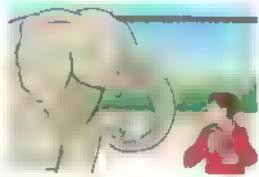
**Mazin** Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.

**Man** Wow! How exciting!<sup>(4)</sup>

**Mazin** Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

**Man** Oh, no<sup>(5)</sup>! What happened?

**Mazin** An elephant ate my ice cream!



### **Post-listening questions:**

**1** Why do you think Mazin didn't see the bats?  
**2** If you were Mazin, how would you feel when the elephant ate your ice cream?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Do you think Paris is a great city for a holiday? Why/ Why not?

 **Read Fatma's email.**

**SB page 52**

**From :** Fatma  
**To :** Azza  
**Subject :** My holiday

**Hi, Azza!**

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails<sup>(1)</sup>!

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art<sup>(2)</sup> at the Louvre, but it was closed.

Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards<sup>(3)</sup>. I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light<sup>(4)</sup> on the top.

**See you soon!**

**Fatma**



(1) فوأة

(2) نور/رسم

(3) طالعات بريجيه

(4) ضوء/مصابح



**Note:**

تعلم كيفية تطبيق الكلمات التالية:

snail /sneɪl/

Eiffel /'eɪfəl/

Luxembourg/ /lʌksəm'bɔ:g/

Seine /seɪn/

**Post-reading question:**

- If you were Fatma, would you enjoy your holiday? Give reasons.

**Pre-reading question:** Do you like travelling by train?

Put the email into the correct order.

WB page 107

**Hi Fady,**

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings!

The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

**See you soon!**

**Mazin**



**Post-reading question:**

- How did Mazin travel to Aswan?

**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات المالة

Australia /ə'streɪliə/ station /'steɪʃən/

## Values

Look at these signs. What do they mean?



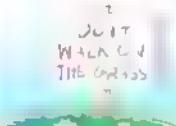
انظر إلى الإشارات. ماذا تعني؟

1. Why do places have these rules for tourists?

لماذا تضع الأماكن هذه القواعد للسائحين؟

2. Can you think of any more rules for tourists?

هل يمكنك التفكير في قواعد أخرى للسائحين؟



# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This ..... says, "Don't walk on the grass".  
a) signal      b) list      c) sign      d) song
2. What school ..... should we follow?  
a) games      b) rules      c) gates      d) classes
3. Ahmed doesn't have any time to lose. He is always ..... .  
a) busy      b) free      c) easy      d) lazy
4. ..... come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great mountains.  
a) Thieves      b) Tourists      c) Bats      d) Lorries
5. We didn't have time to go to the Science Museum, what a ..... !  
a) dear      b) really      c) no      d) pity
6. The children are sleeping now. They are ..... bed.  
a) with      b) for      c) in      d) to
7. I went to the shop to buy tea, but the shop was ..... .  
a) opened      b) open      c) close      d) closed
8. It rained a lot, but the match ..... .  
a) passed      b) continued      c) rode      d) slept
9. I sent my friend a ..... on his birthday.  
a) ticket      b) snail      c) postcard      d) sign
10. Some children like to play with ..... on the beach.  
a) snails      b) tickets      c) signs      d) rules
11. He went to the ..... to watch the new play.  
a) park      b) zoo      c) library      d) theatre
12. Please, tell me what ..... .  
a) happened      b) showed      c) followed      d) slept
13. The bathroom is ready. It's ..... time.  
a) sign      b) light      c) bath      d) ticket



## Speaking

### Responding to good/bad news

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة/السيئة

#### A) Good news: الأخبار الجيدة

How exciting!	كم هو مثيرا!
Really?	حقاً!
Wow!	رائع!
That's interesting!	ذلك شيء!

#### B) Bad news: الأخبار السيئة

Oh, dear!	يا للهول! / يا لها!
Oh, no!	أوه لا! / يا لها!
What a pity!	يا للأسف! / يا للحسرة!

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

القلوبية ٢٢

► Nahla is very tired because she had a lot of work at home.

Nahla : Hello, Noha. Come in, please.

Noha : Hi, Nahla. (1).....?

Nahla : I didn't come to school today because I was very tired.

Noha : (2).....! Why?

Nahla : I had a lot of work at home.

Noha : Did you finish it?

Nahla : (3).....

Noha : Did your daughter help you?

Nahla : (4).....

Noha : (5).....?

Nahla : She didn't help me because she had a test.

# TEST YOURSELF



هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسلحة ترافقك  
لهدف لقياس مدى امتحاناتك للدرس.

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

Nour is telling Sarah about her trip to Paris.

Sarah : What are you doing?

**Nour :** (1) .....

Sarah : Photos of your trip! (2)

?

**Nour :** I went to Paris.

Sarah : (3) .....

**Nour :** I visited the Eiffel Tower and the museum.

Sarah : What did you buy there?

**Nour :** (4) .....

Sarah : Can I see them?

**Nour :** (5)

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A: We didn't want to swim in the sea. B: What a .....!

a) pity                      b) dear                      c) really                      d) no

2. Tourists usually stay in ..... when they visit other countries.

a) mountains	b) hotels
c) tents	d) caves

3. I will take holiday ..... to be good at English.

a) tours	b) towers
c) courses	d) schools

4. I ..... a wonderful time last week.

a) had	b) made
c) did	d) took

5. How exciting! Youssef ..... his driving test.

a) failed	b) passed
c) planned	d) found

6. We ..... our weekend. It was wonderful.

a) enjoyed	b) joined	c) made	d) did
------------	-----------	---------	--------

7. I can't see anything. There's no ..... .  
 a) lit                    b) height                    c) light                    d) dark

8. A: ..... you go to Alexandria? B: Yes, I did.  
 a) Do                    b) Did                    c) Does                    d) Is

9. Did you ..... basketball yesterday?  
 a) play                    b) played                    c) playing                    d) are playing

10. Why ..... he sad last night?  
 a) is                    b) does                    c) was                    d) did

٢٠٢٣ المنشورة

**1 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. They travelled by car. They walked. ( ..... ) ترجمة ملحوظة

2. Where do you go last week? ( ..... ) ترجمة ملحوظة

3. How did your last weekend? ( ..... ) ترجمة ملحوظة

4. Samy didn't came to school yesterday. ( ..... ) ترجمة ملحوظة

**2 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

المنهاج

"Your last holiday"



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

محاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 Ugh! You're eating ..... !  
 a) nails                    b) lights                    c) snails                    d) rules

2 There were many people from many countries on the train, ..... England and France.  
 a) for example                    b) so                    c) because                    d) when

3 Where ..... yesterday evening?  
 a) you did                    b) did you                    c) you were                    d) were you

# Review on Unit 5

卷之三

ՀԵՂԻՆԱԴՐ

## Vocabulary

## 1. Asking and Answering Questions

**about your last holiday:**

**A: Where did you go on holiday?**

**B:** I went to Alexandria.

**A: Did you swim in the sea?**  
**B: Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too.**

A: What food did you eat?  
and I swam with it.

מי יתיר, יתיר עוזר עוזר

**B:** I ate a lot of fish.

## 2. Responding to good news:

How exciting!

Beall 11/2

Mom  
Weby;

That's interesting!

### B) Responding to bad news:

Oh, dear!

Whitman

Wait a pity:



# Al-Adwaa Test

on Unit

5

26

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. When did you go to Jordan?  
a) Last year.  
b) Last holiday.  
c) Last month.  
d) Yesterday.
2. Where did you stay?  
a) On a farm.  
b) On the beach.  
c) In a hotel.  
d) In a holiday flat.
3. How were the places you visited?  
a) Famous.  
b) Boring.  
c) Cool.  
d) Busy.
4. How was your holiday?  
a) Late.  
b) Busy.  
c) Great.  
d) Ugly.

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

اللّام بـة الماء

Salma is telling Fatima about her visit to Alexandria.

Fatima : Where did you go on holiday last year?

Salma : (1).....

Fatima : (2).....?

Salma : I stayed in my uncle's flat.

Fatima : (3).....?

Salma : I travelled by train.

Fatima : Did you swim in the sea?

Salma : (4).....

Fatima : What did you eat there?

Salma : (5).....

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

F. TWANGWALL

Dear Azza,

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the gardens. We also went on a boat on the river. But, we did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought some postcards; I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
2. What did Fatma buy from the busy market?
3. Do you think Fatma enjoyed her holiday in Paris? Why? Why not?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ..... .  
a) picnic      b) The Louvre      c) Paris      d) Eiffel Tower
5. Fatma bought a ..... for Azza.  
a) souvenir      b) postcard      c) food      d) museum
6. The busy market was ..... Fatma's hotel.  
a) far from      b) behind      c) in front of      d) next to

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Egypt, we have the longest ..... in the world.  
a) sea      b) waterfall      c) river      d) forest
2. They stay in a holiday ..... by the beach.  
a) flat      b) fly      c) float      d) fat

F. TWANGWALL

3. Sohaila didn't want to go into the ..... because there were many bats.  
 a) cave      b) cafe      c) shop      d) club

4. These shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of .....  
 a) waterfalls      b) castles      c) souvenirs      d) caves

5. She bought a flat with a nice ..... on the Nile.  
 a) course      b) queen      c) review      d) view

6. We went ..... a boat trip last week.  
 a) on      b) of      c) in      d) at

7. You can see a lot of ..... for holiday courses in newspapers.  
 a) achievements      b) advertisements      c) signs      d) experiments

8. I ..... lunch with Yasmeen last Friday.  
 a) have      b) had      c) having      d) am having

9. They ..... football yesterday.  
 a) played      b) play      c) playing      d) plays

10. A: Where did he ..... in the desert?      B: In a tent.  
 a) sleep      b) slept      c) sleeping      d) sleeps

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. It rain hard last night. (.....)      رَain رain

2. She didn't at school yesterday. (.....)      رَيْدَنْتَ رَيْدَنْتَ

3. Where did you stayed? (.....)      رَسِيدَنْتَ رَسِيدَنْتَ

4. Does your mother cook last night? (.....)      رَكُوكَ رَكُوكَ

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"A nice trip you had"**



Assess your  
progress



50

64%

84%

100%

Study again

Practise more

Take more exams

Well done!



## Unit 6

### Let's eat!

#### Objectives of the unit

**Reading** A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa

**Writing** A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café

**Listening** A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café

**Speaking** Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice, ordering food in a café

**Language** Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice

**Life Skills** Decision making; problem solving

**Issues** Preventative health





• قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضوع أسلمة امتحانية.

• قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسعيم الكلمات الخاصة بالحرسين.

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

bring/brought (v)	يحضر	perfect (adj)	المفردات الرئيسية
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	prefer (red) (v)	مختار
equipment (n)	معدات	recipe (n)	يفضل
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	review (n)	وصفة طعام
ingredients (n)	مقادير / مكونات	sweet (adj)	لقد / مقالة نقدية
			حلو

### Cooking verbs أفعال الطهو

		Kitchenware أدوات المطبخ	
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	bowl (n)	سلطانية
boil (ed) (v)	يغلي	cup (n)	فنجان
cook (ed) (v)	يطهى/يطبخ	saucepan (n)	قدر صغير
stir (red) (v)	يقلب	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاي

### Additional Vocabulary

instructions (n)	تعليمات / إرشادات	share (d) (v)	المفردات الإضافية
			يشارك

### Kinds of food أنواع الأطعمة

Countable nouns	اسماء معدودة	Uncountable nouns	اسماء غير معدودة
crisps	رقيقة البطاطس	olives	ريتون
figs	تين	peppers	فلفل
nuts	جوز / بندق	raisins	ريبت
		coconut	جوزة الهند
			chocolate شوكولاتة
			hummus حمص
			rice pudding أرز بودنج
			salad سلطة

### Choose and complete:

add – perfect – rice – peppers

- 1 My mother is a cook.
- 2 My sister bought green for salad.
- 3 I always prefer pudding for dessert.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس مهارات  
المفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.



## حروف الجر

Prepositions			حروف الجر
cook for	يطبخ لـ	recipe for	وصفة طعام لـ
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	put ..... into	يضع .... في

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
boil	يعملن	freeze	يجمد
delicious	لذيذ	horrible	فظيع/كريه
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
perfect	ممتاز/مثالي	imperfect	غير مثالي

### Check Point

Choose and complete: horrible for - to

1 I read a good recipe ..... steak.

2 This cake is ..... . I can't taste it.

بعد هذا  
التدريب لن Bias  
فهمت لحروف  
الجر والكلمات  
وعكسها.

## Language Notes

احرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع اسئلة امتحانية.



### 1 decide to + inf.

My father decided to buy a new car.

يقرر أن

### 2 Giving instructions

Add the sugar to the rice and stir again.

اعطاء تعليمات

عند اعطاء تعليمات نبدأ العملة بمصدر الفعل.



## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
healthy	صحي	well	بصحة جيدة

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
equip (v) يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	equipment (n) معدات
health (n) صحة	-y	تحويل الاسم لصفة	healthy (adj) صحي

## Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
im-	تعطى عكس المعنى	perfect (adj) ممتاز	imperfect (adj) غير ممتاز
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	healthy (adj) صحي	unhealthy (adj) غير صحي

## Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns اسماء معدودة		Uncountable nouns اسماء غير معدودة	
beans	فول	tomatoes	طماطم
biscuits	سكونيات	vegetables	خضروات
cakes	เคك		
		cheese	جبن
		chocolate	شوكولاتة
		fish	سمك
			sugar
			عصير
			لحم

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة	الكلمة المشابهة	هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المشابهة في المعجم ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.
fridge	ثلاجة	bridge	كوبرى
tasty	لذيذ	nasty	سيئ
prefer	يفضل	refer	يشترى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Wow! Did you make that cake? It looks delicious! The synonym of "delicious" is ..... .
  - a) well
  - b) nasty
  - c) tasteless
  - d) tasty
- 2 To get the noun from the verb "equip", we add the suffix ".....".
  - a) -ive
  - b) -ment
  - c) -ness
  - d) -ion
- 3 To get the opposite of "perfect", we add the prefix ".....".
  - a) ir-
  - b) in
  - c) im-
  - d) dis-

## B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 4

### Pre-listening question:

- Can you make lunch by yourself?

Listen to Nadia and her brother Omar.

Which two things do they not have?

SB page 55

Nadia Let's make lunch. I think we've got all the food.

(1) حمص

Omar There is some salad. Is there any hummus<sup>(1)</sup>?

(2) زيتون

(3) فلفل

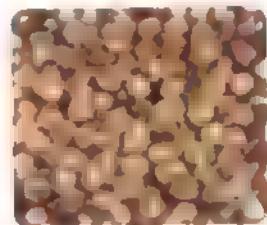
Nadia No, there isn't. But there are some olives<sup>(2)</sup>.

(4) ثوم

(5) بصل

Omar There are some peppers<sup>(3)</sup>, too.

Nadia Good. Is there any cheese?



Omar Yes, there is. I've got it.



Nadia What about figs<sup>(4)</sup>? Are there any figs?



Omar No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia There are some raisins<sup>(5)</sup>.

Omar That's good.



### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية

hummus /hu:məs/ pepper /pepər/ raisin /reɪzən/

### Post-listening question:

- What are Nadia and Omar going to make?

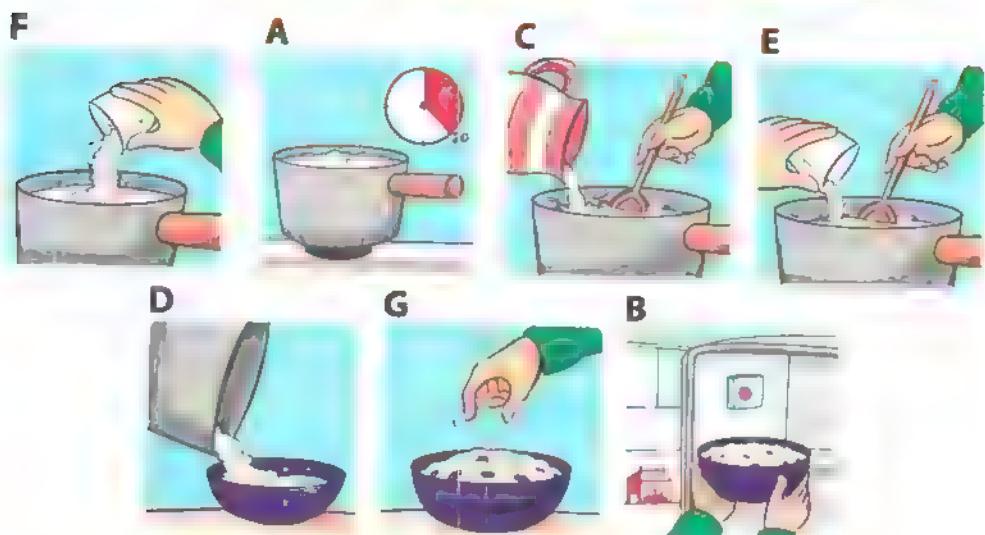
## Pre-reading question:

- Do you like Roz Bel Laban?

Read the recipe and put these pictures in the correct order.

SB page 56

## Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding



### Ingredients

1 cup<sup>(1)</sup> of rice  
2 cups of water  
3 cups of milk  
1 cup of sugar  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  a cup of raisins  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  a cup of nuts  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  a teaspoon - of cinnamon

### Instructions

1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan<sup>(3)</sup>.
2. Boil<sup>(4)</sup> the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. Add<sup>(5)</sup> the milk slowly as you stir<sup>(6)</sup>.
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge<sup>(7)</sup>.

فنجان (1) ملعقة شوك (2) قدر صغير (3) يغلى (4) ينحف (5) يصب (6) ترجمة (7)



### Note :

pudding /'pʊdɪŋ/  
cinnamon /sɪnəmən/  
bowl /bəʊl/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

ingredient /ɪngri:dɪənt/  
saucepan /sɔ:speɪn/

**Note:**  
عدد إعطاء تعليمات  
تردأ الجملة بمصدر  
الفعل.

### Post-reading question:

- Are you going to try making rice pudding?

Read the reviews of the recipe. Who did not like it?

SB page 57

**Really easy!**

- This is a great recipe.
- It's really easy to make.
- There aren't a **lot of** ingredients and it's very quick to cook.

Fawzi

★★★★★

**OK, but a bit boring**

★★★

- I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are **too many** raisins.
- I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

Hani

**Perfect!**

- There are a **lot of** rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's **enough** rice pudding for the whole family.
- There's a **lot of** sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.

Nabila

★★★★★

**Not like my mum's rice pudding!**

★★

- My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good.
- There's **too much** sugar and there aren't **enough** other ingredients.

Salem



**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

recipe /resipi/ coconut /koukənʌt/

Complete the text with **a lot of**, **enough**, **too much** or **too many**.

WB page 110

Mrs Amal has **a lot of** friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has **enough** plates for people to eat on, but she does not have **enough** chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has **too much** fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people, but they can't all sit down. There are **too many** people and not **enough** chairs!



Let's eat! 237

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "....." is not a cooking verb.  
a) Pudding.      b) Boil.      c) Stir.      d) Add.
2. Put rice and water in a ..... before cooking rice pudding.  
a) bag      b) teaspoon      c) saucepan      d) cup
3. Sami thinks that the ..... of rice pudding is easy.  
a) recipe      b) recycling      c) road      d) equipment
4. Who cooked this? It's ..... I like it.  
a) salty      b) delicious      c) ugly      d) unhealthy
5. ..... the rice and water for 20 minutes.  
a) Freeze      b) Eat      c) Boil      d) Bring
6. My mother uses healthy ..... to cook our food.  
a) bowls      b) ingredients      c) instructions      d) fridges
7. Put the rice pudding ..... bowls.  
a) from      b) into      c) for      d) with
8. We keep our food in the ..... to be cold and good.  
a) cooker      b) fridge      c) desk      d) bowl
9. Put the ..... , cinnamon and nuts on top of the rice pudding.  
a) water      b) salt      c) raisins      d) peppers
10. Hazem forgot to ..... the sugar in his tea.  
a) eat      b) cook      c) boil      d) stir
11. There are easy ..... to make rice pudding.  
a) meals      b) teams      c) groups      d) instructions
12. We use sugar to make our food or drinks .....  
a) ugly      b) bad      c) sweet      d) salty
13. I like eating ..... They are full of Vitamin E.  
a) nuts      b) bowls      c) cups      d) pots

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't ..... much sugar to tea. It is unhealthy.  
a) work      b) buy      c) add      d) bring
2. Your idea is ..... They will like it.  
a) ugly      b) boring      c) perfect      d) bad
3. ..... is a natural drink and very healthy.  
a) Raisin      b) Pepper      c) Cinnamon      d) Nuts
4. It's ..... to eat lots of crisps.  
a) healthy      b) unhealthy      c) nice      d) good
5. My mother always ..... lunch at three o'clock.  
a) makes      b) does      c) plays      d) wears
6. You can put a ..... of cinnamon now.  
a) pan      b) pot      c) saucepan      d) teaspoon
7. Most people in Egypt eat ..... for breakfast.  
a) beans      b) fish      c) meat      d) recipes
8. Put the rice into a big .....  
a) field      b) cup      c) cupboard      d) bowl
9. Making rice pudding is ..... Everyone can make it very quickly.  
a) bad      b) difficult      c) easy      d) hard
10. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like ..... food.  
a) ugly      b) hot      c) salty      d) sweet
11. I don't like raisins. I ..... rice pudding with coconut.  
a) stir      b) share      c) prefer      d) bring
12. Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking ..... for ten people.  
a) for      b) in      c) at      d) on
13. Now come to eat, all the food is .....  
a) full      b) ready      c) unhealthy      d) empty

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## C Language

### Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

meat – sugar – salt – cheese – salad – juice – hummus

- **Uncountable nouns do not have a plural form. We cannot count them and we cannot use a/an before them.**

• الأسماء التي لا تُعد ليس لها جمع، لا يمكن عدّها ولا يتم استخدام (a/an) قبلها

- There is some **bread** on the table.
- There isn't any **meat** in the dish.

### 2 Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

(cake – cakes) / (fig – figs) / (olive – olives) / (tomato – tomatoes)

- **Countable nouns are nouns we can count. They can be singular or plural. We can use a/an before a singular countable noun. The plural usually ends in -s.**

• الأسماء المعدودة: هي الأسماء التي يمكن عدّها وتكون مفرداً أو جمّعاً. يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد فقط. ينتهي الاسم الجمّع غالباً بحرف (s).

#### Countable nouns

1

##### Singular مفرد

- تستخدم الفعل في حالة المفرد إذا كان الاسم مفرداً

- There is **a restaurant** in this street.
- This is not **an olive**. It's **a peach**.

2

##### Plural جمّع

- تستخدم الفعل في حالة الجمّع إذا كان الاسم جمّعاً

- There are **some shops** in this street.
- There aren't **any peppers**.



يتم استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد:

(a - e - i - o - u) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك (u)

- There's **an apple** on the table.

- Ola ate **an orange**.

- تستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن:

- There's **a car** in front of my house.

- There's **a book** in my bag.



## Remember



## Learn & Apply

### Form:

There is / isn't      (اسم مفرد يبعد/اسم لا يبعد)  
 - There is **an apple** on the table.  
 - There is **some rice** in the dish.  
 - There isn't **any sugar** in the tea.

### Question:

Is there + **اسم مفرد يبعد/اسم لا يبعد** .....?  
 - Is there **an apple** on the table?

There are/ aren't      (اسم جمجم)

- There are **some apples** on the table.  
 - There are **some raisins**.  
 - There aren't **any potatoes** in the market.

### Question:

- Are there + **اسم جمجم** .....?  
 - Are there **any apples** on the table?



## Remember



## Learn & Apply

### Some

We use "some" for **affirmative sentences**.

نستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) مع الجمل المثبتة. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (بعد) في حالة الجمجم أو اسمًا لا يبعد (كمية).

- There are **some figs** in this dish.  
 - There is **some rice** in this dish.

(countable)

(uncountable)



### We use some in Yes/ No questions that are offers or requests.

يمكنا استخدام (some) في السؤال في حالتي (العرض والطلب).

- Would you like **some tea**? ► offer عرض  
 - Can I have **some books**? ► request طلب

### Any

We use "any" for **negative sentences and questions**.

نستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) مع الجمل الضفافية وقب السؤال. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (بعد) في حالة الجمجم أو اسمًا لا يبعد (كمية).

- There aren't **any olives**. (جملة ضفافية)      - Has koshari got **any meat** in it? (سؤال)

## Quantifiers

### a lot of, enough, too much, too many

- We can use these words with countable and uncountable nouns.

- يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد.

#### a lot of

- تأتي بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جُمجم) / اسم لا يُعد  
(تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شيء بكثرة)

- There is a lot of sugar.
- There are a lot of rice pudding recipes.

#### enough

- تأتي بمعنى (كاف) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جُمجم) / اسم لا يُعد  
(تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شيء يلبيه أو العدد المناسب)

- There are not enough chairs.
- There is enough rice pudding for all the family.

#### too many

- تأتي بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جُمجم)  
(تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شيء رايد عن العدد اللازم)

- There are too many people in the party.

#### too much

- تأتي بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم لا يُعد.  
(تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شيء رايد عن الكم اللازم)

- There's too much rice and fish.

## • Got it?

Read and correct the underlined words:

1 I saw a lot animals in the zoo.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (lot of)

2 He put too many salt in the food.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (much) لأن salt اسم لا يُعد.

3 We have a bread for all. There isn't too much.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (enough) لأن كلمة bread اسم لا يُعد، والمفهوم يحتاج لكلمة كاف.

4 I don't want some sugar.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأن الجملة منفية.

5 There is a boy in the classroom?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Is there) لوجود علامة استفهام مهمل صيغة سؤال.

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a b c or d:

► 1. There ..... a lot of snow in the mountains.

a) does      b) is      c) has      d) were

2. There are .... boys in the family, but there aren't many girls.

a) too much      b) much      c) too many      d) a lot

3. Don't put ..... butter in the pan.

a) enough      b) many      c) too much      d) some

4. There aren't ..... potatoes in the fridge.

a) any      b) some      c) an      d) a

5. There is ..... cheese in the fridge.

a) an      b) as      c) a      d) some

6. There ..... figs in the cupboard.

a) isn't any      b) is any      c) are any      d) aren't any

7. There is ..... rice for you.

a) enough      b) any      c) many      d) lot

8. This cake is very sweet. There's too ..... sugar in it.

a) enough      b) much      c) many      d) lot of

9. There are ..... people on the beach today. Let's go to another one. WB

a) too much      b) too many      c) enough      d) a lot of

10. I don't have ..... friends.

a) a      b) some      c) any      d) much

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Is there any computers in the classroom? (.....)

2. There are any printers in my classroom. (.....)

3. There are a lot of sand in the desert. (.....)

4. We shouldn't eat some crisps. (.....)

5. There is too many kids in the club. (.....)

6. There are any carrots in the fridge? (.....) P-11 Augwell

## Time to Practise



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► 1. There ..... any notebooks in my bag.

a) is      b) isn't      c) are      d) aren't

2. There's ..... hummus in the jar.

a) any      b) some      c) many      d) a lot

3. There are ..... people in the market today.

a) too much      b) much      c) a lot      d) too many

4. She wants to buy another book, but there ..... enough money with her.

a) is      b) are      c) aren't      d) isn't

5. Are there ..... apples in the fridge?

a) a      b) any      c) much      d) an

6. There is not ..... rain for orange trees to grow in the desert.

a) too much      b) too many      c) enough      d) a lot of

7. I don't have ..... money to buy this dress.

a) any      b) some      c) many      d) lot

8. Let's go to the shops. There is ..... time before the train leaves.

a) little      b) too many      c) enough      d) many

9. There ..... figs in the cupboard.

a) is any      b) are any      c) aren't any      d) aren't some

10. ..... any subjects you don't like?

a) There is      b) There are      c) Is there      d) Are there

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

► 1. Are there some tomatoes in the fridge? (.....)

2. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it. (.....)

3. She put too many salt in the food. (.....)

4. There isn't some cheese in the fridge. (.....)

5. There isn't any canals near our village. (.....)

6. There aren't a charger in my room. (.....)

لحل المرين من التدريبات. قم بزيارة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معاملك.



## D Skills

### 1. Speaking

#### Ask and answer questions about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
	What food do you like?	I like salad and meat.	ما الطعام الذي تحبه؟ أحب السلطة واللحم.
	What food don't you like?	I don't like olives.	ما الطعام الذي لا تحبه؟ لا أحب الزيتون.
	Is there any cheese?	Yes, there is.	هل يوجد أي جبن؟ نعم، يوجد.
	Are there any biscuits?	No, there aren't.	هل يوجد أي بسكويت؟ لا، لا يوجد.

#### Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

#### Complete the following dialogue:

##### ► Mona and Hend are making lunch.

Mona: I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

Hend: OK. There is some salad. Is there any hummus?

Mona: (1)....., but there are some olives.

Hend: (2) .....

Mona: Good. I like peppers. (3).....?

Hend: Yes, there is some cheese.

Mona: What about figs? (4).....?

Hend: No, there aren't any figs.

Mona: Are there any raisins?

Hend: (5)..... They are in the fridge.



## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الحد إلى تعميق الطالب من كتابة  
مقدمة بشكل جيد



### How to write about a dish recipe.

كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة أكلة.

- I'd like to tell you about (اسم الأكلة) recipe.
- It's (easy/not easy) to make.
- There are a lot of (المكونات) in it.
- First, (الخطوة الأولى)
- Then, (الخطوة الثانية)
- After that, (الخطوة الثالثة)
- Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة)

#### Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم معاذم متعددة في الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة من المقدمة

### Example

#### A good recipe

There are a lot of recipes, but I like Roz Bel Laban, Egyptian rice pudding. There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food. This is the recipe. First, put rice and water in a saucepan and boil them for 20 minutes. Then, add milk slowly and sugar as you stir. After that, put the rice pudding into bowls and put raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top. Finally, put the rice pudding in the fridge.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"A recipe of a dish I like"

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 6

Lessons  
(1&2)



نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did father and mother eat?  
a) Fish.  
c) Chicken with rice.  
  
b) Rice with fish.  
d) Rice.
2. Where did they have their meal?  
a) At home.  
c) At club.  
  
b) At school.  
d) At cafe.
3. How many people went for lunch?  
a) Four.  
c) Five.  
  
b) Three.  
d) Two.
4. Why did they choose this place? Because it was .....  
a) bad  
c) nice  
  
b) happy  
d) far

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can find teaspoons, saucepans and cups in the .....  
a) kitchen      b) hall      c) playground      d) library
2. This recipe is ..... It's my favourite.  
a) boring      b) bad      c) perfect      d) terrible
3. There are a lot of rice pudding ..... online.  
a) recipes      b) instructions      c) daughters      d) ingredients
4. I don't like raisins. I prefer rice pudding with .....  
a) peppers      b) coconut      c) olive      d) salt
5. I like sweet .....  
a) peppers      b) cinnamon      c) raisins      d) fish
6. What kind of books do you .....?  
a) add      b) boil      c) bring      d) prefer
7. Rice, milk, coconut and raisins are the ..... of rice pudding.  
a) instructions      b) ingredients      c) recipes      d) flavours

8. My mum prepared some ..... for me and my friends on our school trip.

- a) sandwich
- b) sandwiches'
- c) sandwiches
- d) a sandwich

9. There ..... some water on the table.

- a) are
- b) is
- c) were
- d) has

10. I don't like these cakes because they have ..... sugar in them. (WB)

- a) too much
- b) too many
- c) enough
- d) a lot of

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There are any vegetables on the table. (.....)
2. There aren't too much tomatoes. (.....) C-F-C solo 12
3. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (.....) WB
4. Can I have a apple? (.....) F-F-C solo 14

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

## **"Your favourite food"**



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مداد علیم فی نہایة الکتاب

1 Pots, bowls and saucepans are all ..... that mothers use in the kitchen.  
a) food      b) ingredient      c) recipe      d) equipment

2 We can't count .....  
a) cinnamon      b) children      c) men      d) sheep

3 My brother joined ..... university in England.  
a) any      b) an      c) a      d) some



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

			المفردات الرئيسية
amazing (adj)	مذهل	potatoes (n)	بطاطس
fat (n)	دهون	shepherd's pie (n)	فطيرة الراعي
fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	spices (n)	توابل
fruit juice (n)	عصير فواكه	stew (n)	حساء/يخنة
onions (n)	بصل	taste (n)	مذاق

### African dishes اكلات إفريقية

kapenta (n)	كابيتا (نوع سمك)	nyama na irio (n)	نياما نا إريو (اسم أكلة)
koshari (n)	كشري	tagine (n)	طاجن

### Additional Vocabulary

article (n)	مقالة	dry (y ied) (v)	جفف
body (n)	جسم/جسد	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
chocolate ice cream (n)	أيس كريم شيكولاتة	introduction (n)	مقدمة
cooking pot (n)	إناء للطهي	pasta (n)	مكرونة
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	traditional (adj)	تقليدي

### Adjectives to describe the food صفات تصف الطعام

amazing	مذهل	great	عظيم
delicious	لذيذ	healthy	صحي
fantastic	رائع	wonderful	رايم

**Check Point**

**Choose and complete:**

spices - fizzy - pot - dry

- 1 We shouldn't have a lot of **drinks**. It's unhealthy.
- 2 My mum added some **spices** to the recipe.
- 3 It was raining outside. I should **dry** my clothes.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية

**Language Expressions**

add > to your weight	يضيف إلى وزنك	give > advice on	يعطى نصيحة
catch (caught) > fish	يصطاد سمكة	make > snacks	بعد وجبات خفيفة
cause > illness	تسبب المرض	order > food	يطلب طعاماً
clean > teeth	تنظيف الأسنان	see > a doctor	يرور طبيباً

**التعابيرات اللغوية**

**Prepositions**

a glass of	كوب من	careful with	حروف الجر
a meal with	وجبة بها	good for	حريص على
a piece of	قطعة من	look after	مفید لـ
at dinner time	في وقت العشاء	type of	يتعلق بـ

**الكلمات وعکسها**

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
good for	مفید لـ	bad for	ضار
hungry	جائع	full	متناه

**Choose and complete:**

clean - hungry - of - at

- 1 Please, mum. I need a piece of cake.
- 2 I can't wait. I'm very **hungry**.
- 3 We should **clean** our teeth in the morning.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعابير الفوهة  
وحرف الجر



## Language Notes

امرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسلحة انتصارية.



### 1 It is a good idea to + inf.

ابها فكره جيده ان (وسنستخدم لعمديم اسصحه)

- It is a good idea to eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

### 2 try + (v + ing) / noun / try to + inf.

تجربه / تجتازه

- I'd like to try koshari/eating koshari.
- We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.

### 3 enjoy + (v + ing) / noun

يسعدكم

- I enjoy watching TV.
- I enjoy music.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء اثراى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



### الكلمات ومرادفتها

#### Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
careful	حريص	cautious	حريص
right	صحيح	correct	صحيح

#### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
ill (adj)	مريض	-ness		تحول الصفة لاسم		illness (n)	مرض
introduce (v)	يقدم	-tion		تحول الفعل لاسم		introduction (n)	مقدمة
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al		تحول الاسم لصفة		traditional (adj)	تقليدي

## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-reading question:** - What are your favourite snacks?

**Look at the photos and read the introduction. What does the article give advice on?**

SB page 58

### Healthy Snacks

Everyone loves **snacks**! But some **snacks** are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy **snacks**?

#### Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of **fat** and **salt**. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

#### Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the **sweet taste**. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

#### Beans and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious.

#### Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. **Fruit juice** has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

#### Note:

biscuit /biskit/      taste /teɪst/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

#### Post-reading question:

- What types of snacks should we eat a lot?



### Pre-listening question:

- Should we drink a lot of water? Why/ Why not?

### Listen to the interview and check your answers to Ex 6.

SB page 59

**Presenter** It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't forget about what we drink. Dr. Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr. Randa, what should we drink?

**Dr. Randa** Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is great because it hasn't got any fat<sup>(1)</sup> or sugar.

**Presenter** OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us?

**Dr. Randa** Some drinks<sup>(2)</sup> have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

**Presenter** So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy drinks<sup>(3)</sup> don't have any sugar. Are they okay?

**Dr. Randa** No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

**Presenter** So, we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for our teeth?

**Dr. Randa** Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.



### Post-listening question:

- What do you think of fizzy drinks?

## Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite food?

## Lesson 4

Read the descriptions and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 60

### Food in Africa



Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

**Marwa**

- (1) طبق
- (2) سلطة
- (3) وجبات
- (4) مطعم



I live in Morocco. Tagine<sup>(1)</sup> is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew<sup>(2)</sup> with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices<sup>(3)</sup>.

The taste is amazing<sup>(4)</sup>! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

**Hamza**



In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio<sup>(5)</sup> for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful<sup>(6)</sup>! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

**Makena**



Kapenta<sup>(7)</sup> is a popular type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions<sup>(8)</sup>. It is great!

**Bradley**

- (5) طبق
- (6) رائج
- (7) كابينا (اسم اداة)
- (8) بصل

#### Note:

tagine /tæ'ʒi:n/    stew /stju:/    spice /spaɪs/  
Zimbabwe /zɪm'bɑ:bwɪ/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

## Post-reading question:

- Which meal would you like to try? Why?



Listen and tick (✓) the ingredients for shepherd's pie.

WB page 112



In England, people often have a traditional meal called **shepherd's pie<sup>(1)</sup>**. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is **wonderful<sup>(2)</sup>**.

My favourite meal is  
shepherd's pie, and then  
chocolate ice cream.

مطربة الراعي: (1)  
لذيذ (2)



### Note:

shepherd /'ʃepəd/ pie /paɪ/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

### Issues

Work in pairs. Discuss these situations. What should we do? What shouldn't we do?

أعمل مع زميلك. نقاش تلك المواقف. ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟ وماذا يجب لا نفعل؟

1. I like sweet food, but I don't want to eat too many cakes or biscuits.

- You shouldn't eat too many cakes or biscuits.

2. I want to look after my teeth.

3. I'm not hungry at dinner time.

4. I eat a lot of olives because they are good for me.

- You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.

- Unhealthy foods cause illness and add to your weight.

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't drink lots of ..... as they are not good for your body.  
a) fizzy drinks      b) milk      c) apple juice      d) water
2. Koshari is a famous Egyptian .....  
a) dish      b) fish      c) fig      d) fan
3. Cakes and chocolate have a lot of ..... and sugar.  
a) meat      b) fat      c) spices      d) vegetables
4. Tagine is a traditional .....  
a) sport      b) hobby      c) drink      d) meal
5. Please, do not take any ..... between breakfast and lunch.  
a) pots      b) articles      c) snacks      d) snakes
6. ..... give food a good taste.  
a) Cultures      b) Spaces      c) Spices      d) Flavours
7. I always eat ..... of fruit at lunchtime.  
a) prices      b) prizes      c) spices      d) pieces
8. Fruit ..... has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.  
a) fan      b) fizzy      c) fat      d) juice
9. She is still weak after her .....  
a) advice      b) pie      c) illness      d) situation
10. Beans and koshari are ..... meals in Egypt.  
a) bad      b) unknown      c) unusual      d) traditional
11. People of Kenya often have meat ..... for lunch.  
a) glass      b) article      c) pot      d) stew
12. We eat when we are .....  
a) hungry      b) full      c) careful      d) wrong
13. We went to the lake to ..... fish.  
a) clean      b) give      c) catch      d) cause

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kapenta is a type of .....  
a) meat      b) fruit      c) vegetable      d) fish
2. Koshari is a delicious meal with .....  
a) rice      b) fruit      c) fish      d) potatoes
3. Can I have a ..... of cake, please?  
a) cup      b) piece      c) bottle      d) saucepan
4. When he drank the juice, he liked the ..... very much.  
a) paste      b) test      c) taste      d) shoes
5. Water hasn't got any ..... or sugar.  
a) glass      b) pan      c) pot      d) fat
6. Drinks with a lot of sugar are bad for our .....  
a) pieces      b) pies      c) bodies      d) houses
7. We should try to drink a ..... of milk every day.  
a) glass      b) pot      c) bowl      d) piece
8. We love chicken and rice. They are .....!  
a) salty      b) bad      c) scary      d) delicious
9. After washing the clothes, we should put them in the sun to .....  
a) boil      b) dry      c) cool      d) heat
10. We can ..... with our tongues.  
a) smell      b) taste      c) touch      d) see
11. Everyone loves snacks, but some snacks are bad ..... us.  
a) with      b) at      c) to      d) for
12. The doctor gave me ..... on the food I should eat.  
a) advise      b) advice      c) device      d) devise
13. Tagine is the name of a meal and a cooking ..... in Morocco.  
a) piece      b) pot      c) body      d) glass

◀ حل المزيد من التدريبات. قم بإذابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسٍ في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



**C****Language****1 Giving advice**

الاجابة الصحيحة

- We use **should/shouldn't** to say that something is or is not a good idea.

- عند إعطاء النصيحة ستحتمل (should) أو (shouldn't) (لا ينبع أن) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

**Affirmative****Negative**

**Subject + should + inf.**

**Subject + shouldn't + inf.**

- We **should** **drink** a lot of water.
- We **should** **eat** healthy food.

- You **shouldn't** **eat** too many crisps.
- You **should not** **drink** too much fruit juice.



**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1 Ali is ill, he **shouldn't** see a doctor.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**should**) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بفعل شيء مفید.

2 We **should** **ate** healthy food.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**eat**) لوجود **should** التي يأتي بعدها مصدر.

**Yes/No questions:**

**Should + subject + inf. ....?**

A: Should we **eat** healthy snacks?

B: Yes, you **should**.

A: Should he **play** video games tonight?

B: No, he **shouldn't**.



تستخدم **should** لتقديم الاقتراحات أو تقديم الرأي:

We **should** visit our grandparents tonight.



**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1 Should we **drank** lots of fizzy drinks?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**drink**) لوجود **should** التي يتبعها فعل في المصدر.

2 No, we **should** make noise in the library.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**shouldn't**) لوجود **No** الدالة على النفي.



# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

→ → → digital!

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The saucepan is very hot. You shouldn't ..... it.  
a) touched      b) touches      c) touch      d) touching
- 2. You ..... never leave without having breakfast.  
a) shouldn't      b) should      c) will      d) won't
- 3. People should ..... between two and four pieces of fruit a day.  
a) eat      b) eating      c) eats      d) ate
- 4. ..... eat a lot of vegetables.  
a) We have      b) Have we      c) Should we      d) We should
- 5. You should ..... careful with the food you eat.  
a) am      b) is      c) are      d) be
- 6. We ..... drink too much fruit juice. It is unhealthy.  
a) should not      b) should      c) must      d) aren't
- 7. What types of snacks ..... eat a lot?  
a) we should      b) should we      c) should      d) we
- 8. You should always ..... your mother.  
a) helping      b) to help      c) help      d) helped
- 9. You ..... ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.  
a) should      b) shouldn't      c) have      d) haven't
- 10. We ..... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.  
a) should      b) shouldn't      c) must      d) can

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. You should cleaning your teeth in the morning. ( )
- 2. We should study hard for our exams? ( )
- 3. They should drinks healthy water. ( )
- 4. Hany should eat snacks in the classroom. ( )
- 5. That's a fantastic book. You should reading it. ( )
- 6. You should eat too much chocolate. ( )

## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الدرس إلى تعليم الطالب  
من كتابة مفهوم محدد حد



#### 1. How to write about healthy snacks.

كيفية الكتابة عن الوجبات الصحية الخفيفة.

- Everyone loves snacks.
- Some snacks are bad for us.
- Fruit is very good for us.
- Vegetables don't have much sugar.

#### Writing tips

Use linking words to connect the sentences and make the paragraph a well-knit whole.

ستدبرم لروابط لربط بين جمل وعصر مفهوم مدققاً كل

#### Example

#### Healthy snacks/food

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.

#### 2. How to write a review of a café.

- I went to a café in Cairo (الوقت).
- We had (الطعم).
- We had (الحلو) for dessert.

كيفية كتابة نقد عن مقهى

- I went with (الأشخاص).
- The food was (صفاته).
- I enjoyed (الحلو) most.

#### Example

#### A review of a café

I would like to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Alexandria last Friday with my dad, mother and brother. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. It was wonderful watching the clean water of the sea. I had my favourite meal, chicken. I love chicken, but this was different. It was delicious. All my family had fish from the sea. We all liked our food. We then all had Egyptian rice pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again one day.

# TEST YOURSELF



Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4



## 1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

To be healthy, our bodies need food, exercise and enough sleep. Food gives us energy, but we should choose the healthy kind of food. The good food should contain meat, rice, beans, fruit and vegetables. They build our bodies and make us strong. Fruit and vegetables give us vitamins to stop illness. They also give us fibre which helps us digest our food. Exercises help us to be fit. Enough sleep helps us to rest and renew our energy.

### A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a title to this text. ....
2. What should good food contain? .....
3. Why do you think we should eat healthy food? .....

### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "us" refers to .....  
a) animals      b) birds      c) people      d) things
5. " . . ." means to do something again after a pause, usually with more energy.  
a) Renew      b) Digest      c) Contain      d) Fit
6. Exercises help us to be .....  
a) fat      b) fit      c) fake      d) fool

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this type ..... fish. It's salty.  
a) at      b) on      c) of      d) from
2. Eating lots of fats and sugar ..... much to your weight.  
a) adds      b) makes      c) catches      d) orders
7. Chop the vegetables into ..... and eat them with your breakfast.  
a) spears      b) species      c) spices      d) pieces
3. ..... is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes.  
a) Cheese      b) Koshari      c) Kapenta      d) Milk
4. Eating unhealthy food ..... illness.  
a) causes      b) catches      c) adds      d) cleans
5. When we are ill, we should ..... a doctor.  
a) give      b) cause      c) see      d) give

6. I look ..... my little sister when my mother is out.  
a) for                    b) after                    c) at                    d) up

7. Crisps every day! That's very bad for you. You ..... stop eating them!  
a) should                b) shouldn't              c) mustn't              d) should never

8. You ..... study hard to get high marks.  
a) should                b) shouldn't              c) mustn't              d) doesn't

9. You should ..... that new film. It's great!  
a) seeing                b) to see                 c) sees                  d) see

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. It's a beautiful day. We shouldn't walk to the park. ( )

2. Children shouldn't running in the street. ( )

3. We shouldn't be very careful when we cook in the kitchen. ( )

4. We should go to school on time? ( )

**4** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Food you should or shouldn't eat"



**Challenging Questions**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مذاب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

1 People should eat between two and four pieces of fruit ..... day.

a) an                    b) in                    c) a                    d) at

2 We should try to drink a glass of milk .....

a) every day            b) everyday            c) every              d) day

3 We ..... never eat too many sweets. They are bad for our teeth.

a) should                b) should to            c) shouldn't            d) shouldn't to



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

assistant (n)	مساعد/نائٍ	dessert (n)	حلوى
café (n)	مقهى	menu (n)	قائمة طعام
chef (n)	شيف / كبير الطهاة	waiter (n)	نادل/جرسون
customer (n)	زيون		

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

basbousa (n)	بسبوسة	look (ed) like	يشبه
cheese pizza (n)	بيتزا بالجبنه	real (adj)	حقيقي
go back (v)	يعود/يرجع	restaurant (n)	مطعم
hope (d) (v)	يأمل	review (n)	نقد
kunafa (n)	كنافة	tomato pizza (n)	بيتزا بالطماطم

### المفردات الإضافية

Choose and complete:

chef - menu - review - kunafa

1 My uncle is a famous .....

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لتقييم فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

2 I read a ..... about that restaurant.

3 My favourite dessert is .....

### Language Expressions

look > nice/delicious	يبدو لطيفاً / لذيذاً	make >	a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
write > a list	يكتب قائمة	>	sure	يتناول

### العبارات اللغوية

ينتاك  
يتناول

## Prepositions

for lunch	على القدح	on the sea	حروف البحر
look out of	ينظر من	on the water	في الماء

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
choose	ختار chose	chosen
write	يكتب wrote	written

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	معكوسها
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
small	صغير	large	كبير

Choose and complete: looks – for – on – make

1 I bought some bread for lunch.  
 2 Students should look sure from their answers.  
 3 This tagine looks delicious.

يمهد هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
لتغييرات اللغة  
وحرروف البحر

## B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

### Pre-listening question:

- What kind of pizza do you like?

Listen to the people in a café. Tick (✓) the food that the customer buys.

SB page 60

Assistant Hello. What would you like today?

Customer I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza,  
please.

Assistant OK. Anything else?

Customer Yes, a salad, please.

Assistant Small or large?

Customer Small, please.

Assistant And would you like any drinks?

Customer Have you got any fruit juice?

Assistant Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer I'd like an orange juice, please.

Assistant Is that everything?

Customer Yes, it is.

Assistant That's 105 pounds, please.

Customer Thank you, here you are.

### Post-listening question:

- What kind of pizza would the customer like to have?



## Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Did you try eating in a café? What did you like about it?

Read the review. What did Sara like most about her visit?

SB page 62

### City Café



Great visit! ★★★★☆

Review by: Sara

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.)

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!! 😊

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

Post-reading questions:

1 Why did Sara's mum have a salad?

2 Who is Ashraf?

**Pre-reading question:**

- What is your favourite meal?

**Put the article in the correct order.**

WB page 114



1. I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)
2. I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.
3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.
4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

**Post-reading question:**

- Why did they like the café?

### **Pre-reading question:**

- What kind of food do you like?

**Read this review. Circle the topic sentence. Underline the supporting sentences.**



A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

### **Post-reading question:**

- Why was the fish very fresh?

## **Project**

**Write a recipe for a meal or snack.**

اكتب وصفة لوجبة (رئيسيّة) أو وجبة خفيفة.

1. Choose a meal or a snack. Write a list of ingredients.
2. Make a list of instructions. Make sure that you:
  - Say what to do for each part of the recipe.
  - Put the instructions in the correct order.
3. Write your recipe. You can add pictures if you like.

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter gave me the ..... to choose food.  
a) list      b) book      c) menu      d) dish
2. I ate a small pizza, but my brother ordered a ..... one.  
a) tiny      b) little      c) small      d) large
3. A/An ..... is the person who buys things from a shop.  
a) waiter      b) customer      c) assistant      d) chef
4. He cooks food in a restaurant. He is a .....  
a) teacher      b) doctor      c) farmer      d) chef
5. The ..... works in a restaurant.  
a) waiter      b) water      c) nurse      d) customer
6. We went to a nice ..... to have our lunch out.  
a) classroom      b) playground      c) library      d) restaurant
7. My father took us to a ..... for lunch.  
a) café      b) farm      c) field      d) hall
8. We chose this café for lunch because it ..... very nice.  
a) saw      b) looked      c) made      d) did
9. The tomato pizza has a good .....  
a) taste      b) test      c) toast      d) tasty
10. I love looking ..... the window and watching the cars in the streets.  
a) out of      b) out      c) of      d) with
11. Ashraf and I both had rice ..... lunch.  
a) at      b) for      c) on      d) with
12. We ..... the food we want to eat in the restaurant from the menu.  
a) boil      b) cook      c) add      d) choose
13. I'd like to eat a cheese and tomato .....  
a) pizza      b) juice      c) soup      d) bread



C

## Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب  
من حل أسلحة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



### Speaking

#### Ordering food in a café

طلب طعام بالمقهى

##### Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

##### Response

جملة الرد

	What would you like?	ماذا تريده؟
	I'd like pizza.	أريد بيتزا.
	Have you got any salad?	هل لديكم سلطة؟
	Yes, we have. Small or large?	نعم لدينا. أريد طبقاً كبيراً أم صغيراً؟
	Large, please.	طبقاً كبيراً من فضلك.
	Is that everything?	هل هذا كل ما تريده؟
	Yes, thank you.	نعم، شكرانك.
	Anything else?	هل تريدين شيئاً آخر؟
	No, thanks.	لا، شكران.
	That's 100 pounds.	الحساب مائة جنيه.
	Thank you, here you are.	شكراً، تفضل.



# PRACTICE

## Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

- ▶ Amgad is ordering food in a restaurant.

**Waiter** : Hello, how can I help you?

**Amgad** : Hello, (1) \_\_\_\_\_

**Waiter** : Here's the menu.

**Amgad** : (2) \_\_\_\_\_

**Waiter** : With or without rice?

**Amgad** : (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Waiter** : Anything else?

**Amgad** : No, thank you, . (4) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Waiter** : That's 80 pounds, please.

**Amgad** : (5) \_\_\_\_\_

## Time to Practise



Complete the following dialogue:

- ▶ A customer is at a restaurant to have his lunch.

**Assistant** : What would you like?

**Customer** : (1) \_\_\_\_\_

**Assistant** : And would you like any drinks?

**Customer** : (2) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Assistant** : Yes, we've got tea and coffee.

**Customer** : (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Assistant** : Coffee! OK.

**Customer** : (4) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Assistant** : That's 110 pounds, please.

**Customer** : (5) \_\_\_\_\_



# TEST YOURSELF

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer wants to eat a chicken pizza.

**Waiter** : How can I help you?

**Customer**: (1) .....

**Waiter** : Yes, we've got a chicken pizza. Would you like a small or large one?

**Customer**: (2)

**Waiter** : Would you like a drink?

**Customer**: Yes, please. (3)

**Waiter** : OK.

**Customer**: (4) .....

**Waiter** : That's 150 pounds.

**Customer**: (5)

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter asked me what food I'd like to

a) say      b) tell      c) bring      d) order

2. Mum likes eating salad. It is .....

a) healthy      b) unhealthy      c) bad      d) weak

3. We catch fish from the .....

a) lake      b) mountain      c) forest      d) cave

4. When we sat on the table, a waiter offered us the .....

a) diagram      b) poster      c) list      d) menu

5. I like pizza. It's a delicious .....

a) mail      b) male      c) meal      d) mile

6. Tagine is a ..... with meat, vegetables fruit and spices.

a) straw      b) stew      c) rice      d) sugar

7. We went to the ..... yesterday to have our dinner. It was great.

a) café      b) coffee      c) cinema      d) park

8. We should ..... lots of fish. It doesn't have a lot of fat in it.

a) had      b) having      c) has      d) have

**9.** Lama feels tired. She ..... have a rest.

- a) needs
- b) should
- c) has
- d) does

## 10. What kinds of food should we ... ?

- a) eating
- b) eat
- c) ate
- d) eaten

**3** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Students shouldn't making noise in the library. ( )  
2. The doctor told him that he shouldn't eat less. He's too fat. ( )  
3. You shouldn't help your little brother. ( )  
4. A: I'm very ill. B: You should go to school today. ( )

**Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"A review of a restaurant you visited"**



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاناً على نهاد الكتاب

1 Read this review if you want to be sure that this café is amazing.

- a) have
- b) take
- c) do
- d) make

2 My father is very ill. He ..... have unhealthy food.

- a) shouldn't
- b) should
- c) can
- d) must

# Review

on Unit

6

## Vocabulary

amazing	مُعْجِزٌ
peppers	بَلَلَاتٌ
bowl	سَطَابِقَةٌ
raisins	رَيْسٌ
recipe	وصِيْفَرٌ
cinnamon	دَارْجَةٌ
rice pudding	جِلْجُولٌ
coconut	حَوْنَاءٌ
salt	ملح
saucepan	قَدْرٌ صَفِيرٌ
snack	شَكْرَةٌ
fat	جَهْوَنْ
spices	لِيْغَرٌ
stew	دَسَّاصَةٌ/دَسَّاصَةٌ
fizzy drinks	مشْبُوشَاتٌ غَازِيَّةٌ
sweet taste	مَذْكُورَةٌ حَلْوَةٌ
healthy	صَحِيفَةٌ
tagine	طَاجِنٌ
hummus	هُومُوسٌ
teaspoon	مَكْوَافِيَةٌ شَلَّانِيَّةٌ
ingredients	مَقْدِيَّاتٌ/مُكَوِّنَاتٌ
olives	فَجُونٌ

## Language

### 1 Ask and answer questions about food:

- What food do you like?  
- I like salad and meat.
- What food don't you like?  
- I don't like olives.
- Is there any cheese?  
- Yes, there is.
- Are there any biscuits?  
- No, there aren't.

**2 Ordering food in a café:**

- What would you like?  
- I'd like pizza.
- Have you got any salad?  
- Yes, we have. Small or large?  
• Is that everything?  
- Yes, thank you.
- Anything else?  
- No, thanks.

**3 Giving advice:**

- We should drink a lot of water.  
• You shouldn't eat too many crisps.



## Listening

١ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. What did you have in the café?  
a) Fish.      b) Basbousa.      c) Koshari.      d) Kunafa.
2. What did your cousins have?  
a) Fish.      b) Basbousa.      c) Koshari.      d) Kunafa.
3. How was the food?  
a) Hot.      b) Spicy.      c) Salty.      d) Delicious.
4. Who liked the food?  
a) You.      b) Your family.      c) Your cousins.      d) All of us.



## Language Functions

٢ Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Nada about her favourite dish.

Sama : Hi, Nada!

Nada : Hi, Sama!

Sama : (1).....?

Nada : Molokhia. What about you?

Sama : I love Koshari.

Nada : (3).....?

Sama : Yes, of course. Rice, pasta, hummus and lentils.

Nada : Good. (4).....

Sama : Will you try it?

Nada : (5).....



## Reading Comprehension

٣ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Africa has a lot of interesting kinds of food. Egypt, for example is famous for "koshari". It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta, tomato sauce and fried onions. It's very popular; many people like it. In Morocco, there is a traditional meal called

"tagine", it's a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing, the name of tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. In Zimbabwe, people often eat "kapenta". It's a type of fish which people dry in the sun. They often cook it with tomatoes and onions. It's great. In Kenya, people like "nyama na irio"; it's a stew with meat and potatoes. People there often make it for dinner. Tell me, which food you would like to try. For me, I like most traditional Egyptian food: koshari, falafel and kebab. All have special flavours.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
3. Why do you think people in Egypt like koshari?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "type" means .....  
a) piece      b) snack      c) kind      d) slice
5. People of Kenya often have meat stew for .....  
a) breakfast      b) dinner      c) lunch      d) break
6. The writer likes koshari which has got rice, pasta and .....  
a) potato      b) meat      c) vegetable      d) tomato



## Vocabulary and Structure

**C) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Roz Bel laban is the name for the Egyptian rice .....  
a) falafel      b) pudding      c) ful medames      d) koshari
2. Which of these can you boil water in?  
a) Ball.      b) Cup.      c) Glass.      d) Saucepan.
3. Most children love food that has sweet .....  
a) kind      b) type      c) taste      d) test
4. Waiter: That's 150 pounds. ..... Here you are.  
a) Helper      b) Customer      c) Seller      d) Worker

5. We should ..... our teeth before we sleep.  
a) give      b) catch      c) add      d) clean

6. We bought a lot of vegetables and made a nice ..... .  
a) chips      b) salad      c) kunafa      d) rice pudding

7. I'd like to have fish and rice ..... lunch today.  
a) in      b) of      c) for      d) on

8. There ..... some water in the bottle.  
a) isn't      b) is      c) aren't      d) are

9. Yara likes to eat ..... meat for dinner.  
a) any      b) some      c) a      d) an

10. She's always tired. She ..... not go to bed late every night.  
a) hasn't      b) shouldn't      c) should      d) must

**5** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. She has any apple. (.....)

2. Is there any mobile phones? (.....)

3. He can't sleep as he has too many coffee. (.....)

4. We should has a lot of water a day. (.....)



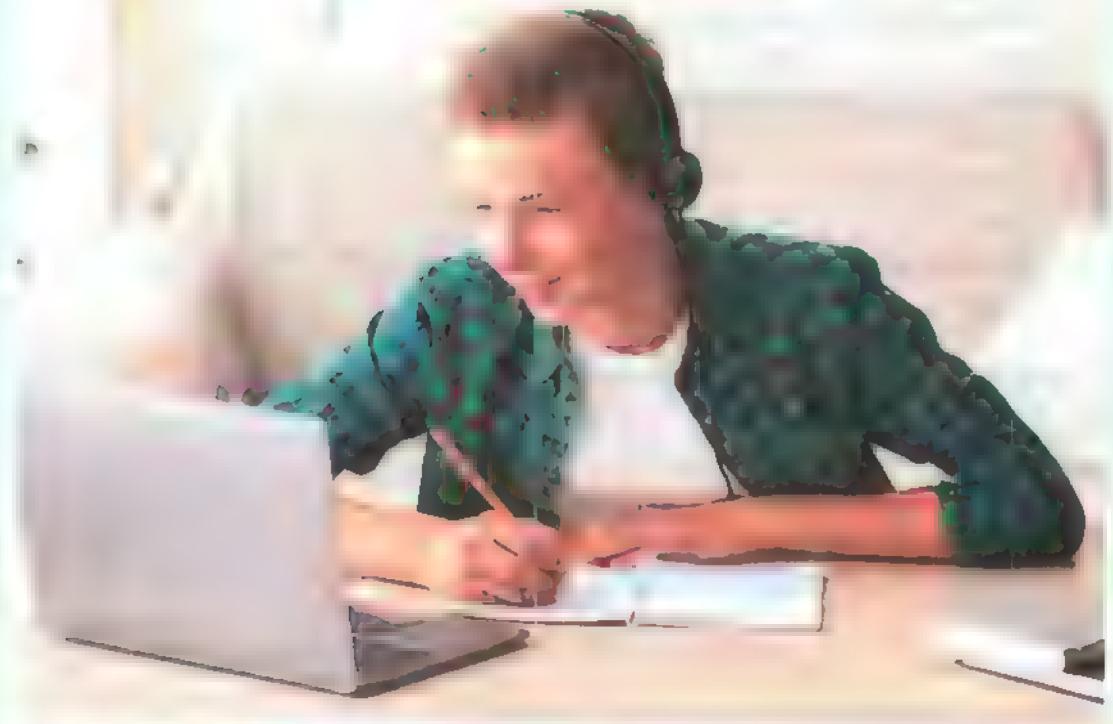
## Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"A healthy meal you had"**

WB

## Review B



**Units 4, 5 & 6**

# Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 | WB pages 116 & 117

Lesson 6

## Pre-reading question:

- What do you do at Sham El-Nessim?

Match paragraphs 1–4 with the headings a–d.

## Sham El-Nessim

### 1. What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year.

نسمة ٦

We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!



### 2. What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.



### 3. A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy fesekh?"?

Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

### 4. What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We are painting eggs! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.

Do you know any other special food? Click on the icon at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe for it.

## Post-reading questions:

1 How do you eat fesekh?

2 What did you do at Sham El-Nessim last year?

**Pre-listening question:**

- How do you make pancakes?

 Listen and number the pictures in the correct order.

ستمع و ترتيب



**Speaker:** In the UK, many people eat **pancakes** at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

الملكة المتحدة

Put all your ingredients in a bowl and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes!

الكعك المعجن

Cook each pancake for 2 to 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake.

عسل العجل

Eat your pancakes with **honey** and nuts or with sugar and lemon juice.

Hmm, they are delicious.

**Post-listening question:**

- What do you think of pancakes?

 Read the email and complete Judy's shopping list.

**Hi Judy,**

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people.

Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

**Many thanks**

**Mona**



# End of Term Practice

WB pages 118 & 119



## Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نحو الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Shorouk goes to school .....  
a) alone  
c) with her mother  
b) with Lubna only  
d) with Lubna and Alaa
2. Shorouk is in the ..... stage.  
a) nursery  
c) secondary  
b) preparatory  
d) university
3. Shorouk's parents work in .....  
a) the same place  
c) the same school  
b) different places  
d) a factory
4. ..... work in a hospital.  
a) Alaa's parents  
c) Shorouk's parents  
b) Lubna's parents  
d) No parents



## Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Nesma and Reem go to the school library.**

**Reem :** Good morning, Nesma, when will we start doing our research?

**Nesma :** During the break.

**Reem :** Great. Where (1)..... ?

**Nesma :** In the school library.

**Reem :** Are (2)..... ?

**Nesma :** Of course, I'm ready.

**Reem :** Is it easy to find the books we need?

**Nesma :** (3)

**Reem :** Who will help us there?

**Nesma :** (4).

**Reem :** I hope (5).....



## Reading Comprehension

### Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects?
2. Why does she want to speak English?
3. Is Mona right to use technology? Why?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ...  

a) Cairo	b) technology
c) a river	d) summer school
5. Where is Mona now?  

a) In Egypt.	b) In England.
c) In Uganda.	d) In Cambridge.
6. What does Mona use to practise her English?  

a) Her tablet.	b) Her phone.
c) Her laptop.	d) a and b.
7. Mona is talking about her ...  

a) pets and hobbies	b) life and friends
c) boss at work	d) travels to Uganda

D

## Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online ...

- a) 3D printer
- b) diary
- c) mouse
- d) laptop

10. Why don't we ..... swimming next week?

- a) go
- b) do
- c) make
- d) see

**5** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)
2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (.....)
3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)
4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (.....)

E

## Writing

**6** Write an email of 80 words about a typical day in your life.

# Listening Texts

## Unit 1 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris. He works very hard. My mother is a teacher. My two brothers and I go to the same school.

## Unit 1 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Heidi is an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in a small house. Heidi sleeps in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk.

## Unit 2 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping.

## Unit 2 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

In the USA, there is a lot of snow in winter. The children travel to school on a snowmobile. It's cold, but it's fast- and fun!

## Unit 3 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My best friend is Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games. His favourite subject is English.

## Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My favourite book is called "Gulliver's Travels", by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm.

## Unit 4 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

I love technology! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

## Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Rana is my best friend. Her favourite subject is computer studies. She likes technology. She spends a lot of time on her laptop playing video games.

## Unit 5 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Last winter, Ragab travelled to Aswan. He travelled with his family. They took a train. It was a fantastic journey. He bought many souvenirs from the shops there.

## Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

I went to Jordan by plane last holiday. It was great. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We swam every day. We visited a lot of famous places.

## Unit 6 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Last week, I went with my mum, dad and my little sister to a cafe near the river. I had chicken with rice, but my parents had rice with fish. My dad chose this place because it looked nice.

## Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

I had my favourite meal, koshari in a café for lunch. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food. It was delicious.

## End of Term Practice

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Shorouk is 12 years old. She is in preparatory one. She goes to school with her friends Lubna and Alaa. Shorouk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

# Challenging Questions Answers

## Unit 1

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) same      2. d) have  
3. c) We

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. Are      2. good at  
3. doesn't have      4. is

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) have      2. c) find  
3. b) on

## Unit 2

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) after      2. a) never does  
3. c) Sometimes

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. today's      2. chemist's  
3. They

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. a) when      2. a) quite  
3. d) have

## Unit 3

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. c) description      2. d) is able  
3. a) have

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) interesting      2. c) adjectives  
3. a) shout

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) by      2. b) called  
3. c) fun

## Unit 4

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) design      2. d) laptop computers  
3. c) a

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. b) have      2. d) is using  
3. c) are always

1. c) answer      2. a) when  
3. b) don't

## Unit 5

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. b) echo      2. a) call out  
3. c) called

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) get to      2. a) in  
3. b) didn't go

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) snails      2. a) for example  
3. d) were you

## Unit 6

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) equipment      2. a) cinnamon  
3. c) a

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) a      2. a) every day  
3. a) should

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) make  
2. a) shouldn't